



Welcome to CodeIgniter

CodeIgniter is an Application Development Framework - a toolkit - for people who build web sites using PHP. Its goal is to enable you to develop projects much faster than you could if you were writing code from scratch, by providing a rich set of libraries for commonly needed tasks, as well as a simple interface and logical structure to access these libraries. CodeIgniter lets you creatively focus on your project by minimizing the amount of code needed for a given task.

Please read the Introduction section of the User Guide to learn the broad concepts behind CodeIgniter, then read the [Getting Started](#) page.

Who is CodeIgniter For?

CodeIgniter is right for you if:

- You want a framework with a small footprint.
- You need exceptional performance.
- You need broad compatibility with standard hosting accounts that run a variety of PHP versions and configurations.
- You want a framework that requires nearly zero configuration.
- You want a framework that does not require you to use the command line.
- You want a framework that does not require you to adhere to

restrictive coding rules.

- You are not interested in large-scale monolithic libraries like PEAR.
- You do not want to be forced to learn a templating language (although a template parser is optionally available if you desire one).
- You eschew complexity, favoring simple solutions.
- You need clear, thorough documentation.

[Top of Page](#)

[CodeIgniter](#) · Copyright © 2007 · [Ellislab, Inc.](#)

Getting Started With CodeIgniter

Any software application requires some effort to learn. We've done our best to minimize the learning curve while making the process as enjoyable as possible.

The first step is to [install](#) CodeIgniter, then read all the topics in the **Introduction** section of the Table of Contents.

Next, read each of the **General Topics** pages in order. Each topic builds on the previous one, and includes code examples that you are encouraged to try.

Once you understand the basics you'll be ready to explore the **Class Reference** and **Helper Reference** pages to learn to utilize the native libraries and helper files.

Feel free to take advantage of our [Community Forums](#) if you have questions or problems, and our [Wiki](#) to see code examples posted by other users.

Previous Topic: [Architectural Goals](#) · [Top of Page](#) · [User Guide Home](#) · Next Topic: [CodeIgniter URLs](#)

[CodeIgniter](#) · Copyright © 2007 · [Ellislab, Inc.](#)

Installation Instructions

CodeIgniter is installed in four steps:

1. Unzip the package.
2. Upload the CodeIgniter folders and files to your server. Normally the `index.php` file will be at your root.
3. Open the **`application/config/config.php`** file with a text editor and set your base URL.
4. If you intend to use a database, open the **`application/config/database.php`** file with a text editor and set your database settings.

If you wish to increase security by hiding the location of your CodeIgniter files you can rename the **`system`** folder to something more private. If you do rename it, you must open your main **`index.php`** file and set the **`$system_folder`** variable at the top of the page with the new name you've chosen.

That's it!

If you're new to CodeIgniter, please read the [Getting Started](#) section of the User Guide to begin learning how to build dynamic PHP applications. Enjoy!

Previous Topic: [Credits](#) · [Top of Page](#) · [User Guide Home](#) · Next Topic: [Upgrading from a Previous Version](#)

[CodeIgniter](#) · Copyright © 2007 · [Ellislab, Inc.](#)

Design and Architectural Goals

Our goal for CodeIgniter is **maximum performance, capability, and flexibility in the smallest, lightest possible package.**

To meet this goal we are committed to benchmarking, re-factoring, and simplifying at every step of the development process, rejecting anything that doesn't further the stated objective.

From an technical and architectural standpoint, CodeIgniter was created with the following objectives:

- **Dynamic Instantiation.** In CodeIgniter, components are loaded and routines executed only when requested, rather than globally. No assumptions are made by the system regarding what may be needed beyond the minimal core resources, so the system is very light-weight by default. The events, as triggered by the HTTP request, and the controllers and views you design will determine what is invoked.
- **Loose Coupling.** Coupling is the degree to which components of a system rely on each other. The less components depend on each other the more reusable and flexible the system becomes. Our goal was a very loosely coupled system.
- **Component Singularity.** Singularity is the degree to which components have a narrowly focused purpose. In CodeIgniter, each class and its functions are highly autonomous in order to allow maximum usefulness.

CodeIgniter is a dynamically instantiated, loosely coupled system with high component singularity. It strives for simplicity, flexibility, and high performance in a small footprint package.

CodeIgniter URLs

By default, URLs in CodeIgniter are designed to be search-engine and human friendly. Rather than using the standard "query string" approach to URLs that is synonymous with dynamic systems, CodeIgniter uses a **segment-based** approach:

```
www.your-site.com/news/article/my_article
```

Note: Query string URLs can be optionally enabled, as described below.

URI Segments

The segments in the URL, in following with the Model-View-Controller approach, usually represent:

```
www.your-site.com/class/function/ID
```

1. The first segment represents the controller **class** that should be invoked.
2. The second segment represents the class **function**, or method, that should be called.
3. The third, and any additional segments, represent the ID and any variables that will be passed to the controller.

The [URI Class](#) and the [URL Helper](#) contain functions that make it easy to work with your URI data. In addition, your URLs can be remapped using the [URI Routing](#) feature for more flexibility.

Removing the index.php file

By default, the **index.php** file will be included in your URLs:

```
www.your-site.com/index.php/news/article/my_article
```

You can easily remove this file by using a .htaccess file with some simple rules. Here is an example of such a file, using the "negative" method in which everything is redirected except the specified items:

```
RewriteEngine on
RewriteCond $1 !^(index\.php|images|robots\.txt)
RewriteRule ^(.*)$ /index.php/$1 [L]
```

In the above example, any HTTP request other than those for index.php, images, and robots.txt is treated as a request for your index.php file.

Adding a URL Suffix

In your **config/config.php** file you can specify a suffix that will be added to all URLs generated by CodeIgniter. For example, if a URL is this:

```
www.your-site.com/index.php/products/view/shoes
```

You can optionally add a suffix, like **.html**, making the page appear to be of a certain type:

```
www.your-site.com/index.php/products/view/shoes.html
```

Enabling Query Strings

In some cases you might prefer to use query strings URLs:

```
index.php?c=products&m=view&id=345
```

CodeIgniter optionally supports this capability, which can be enabled

in your **application/config.php** file. If you open your config file you'll see these items:

```
$config['enable_query_strings'] = FALSE;  
$config['controller_trigger'] = 'c';  
$config['function_trigger'] = 'm';
```

If you change "enable_query_strings" to TRUE this feature will become active. Your controllers and functions will then be accessible using the "trigger" words you've set to invoke your controllers and methods:

```
index.php?c=controller&m=method
```

Please note: If you are using query strings you will have to build your own URLs, rather than utilizing the URL helpers (and other helpers that generate URLs, like some of the form helpers) as these are designed to work with segment based URLs.

Previous Topic: [Getting Started](#) · [Top of Page](#) · [User Guide Home](#) · Next Topic: [Controllers](#)

[CodeIgniter](#) · Copyright © 2007 · [Ellislab, Inc.](#)

Credits

CodeIgniter was developed by [Rick Ellis](#), who in his other life is CEO of [Ellislab, Inc.](#) The core framework was written specifically for this application, while many of the class libraries, helpers, and sub-systems borrow from the code-base of [ExpressionEngine](#), a Content Management System written by Rick Ellis and [Paul Burdick](#).

A hat tip goes to Ruby on Rails for inspiring us to create a PHP framework, and for bringing frameworks into the general consciousness of the web community.

The CodeIgniter logo and icons were created by Rick Ellis.

The pull-down table of contents was created with the use of the [moo.fx](#) library.

Previous Topic: [Change Log](#) · [Top of Page](#) · [User Guide Home](#) · Next Topic: [Downloading CodeIgniter](#)

[CodeIgniter](#) · Copyright © 2007 · [Ellislab, Inc.](#)

Upgrading From a Previous Version

Please read the upgrade notes corresponding to the version you are upgrading from.

- [Upgrading from 1.5.3 to 1.5.4](#)
- [Upgrading from 1.5.2 to 1.5.3](#)
- [Upgrading from 1.5.0 or 1.5.1 to 1.5.2](#)
- [Upgrading from 1.4.1 to 1.5.0](#)
- [Upgrading from 1.4.0 to 1.4.1](#)
- [Upgrading from 1.3.3 to 1.4.0](#)
- [Upgrading from 1.3.2 to 1.3.3](#)
- [Upgrading from 1.3.1 to 1.3.2](#)
- [Upgrading from 1.3 to 1.3.1](#)
- [Upgrading from 1.2 to 1.3](#)
- [Upgrading from 1.1 to 1.2](#)
- [Upgrading from Beta 1.0 to Beta 1.1](#)

[Previous Topic: Installation Instructions](#) · [Top of Page](#) · [User Guide Home](#) · [Next Topic: Troubleshooting](#)

[CodeIgniter](#) · Copyright © 2007 · [Ellislab, Inc.](#)

Model-View-Controller

CodeIgniter is based on the Model-View-Controller development pattern. MVC is a software approach that separates application logic from presentation. In practice, it permits your web pages to contain minimal scripting since the presentation is separate from the PHP scripting.

- The **Model** represents your data structures. Typically your model classes will contain functions that help you retrieve, insert, and update information in your your database.
- The **View** is the information that is being presented to a user. A View will normally be a web page, but in CodeIgniter, a view can also be a page fragment like a header or footer. It can also be an RSS page, or any other type of "page".
- The **Controller** serves as an *intermediary* between the Model, the View, and any other resources needed to process the HTTP request and generate a web page.

CodeIgniter has a fairly loose approach to MVC since Models are not required. If you don't need the added separation, or find that maintaining models requires more complexity than you want, you can ignore them and build your application minimally using Controllers and Views. CodeIgniter also enables you to incorporate your own existing scripts, or even develop core libraries for the system, enabling you to work in a way that makes the most sense to you.

Previous Topic: [Application Flow Chart](#) · [Top of Page](#) · [User Guide Home](#) · Next Topic: [Architectural Goals](#)

[CodeIgniter](#) · Copyright © 2007 · [Ellislab, Inc.](#)

URI Class

The URI Class provides functions that help you retrieve information from your URI strings. If you use URI routing, you can also retrieve information about the re-routed segments.

Note: This class is initialized automatically by the system so there is no need to do it manually.

`$this->uri->segment(n)`

Permits you to retrieve a specific segment. Where **n** is the segment number you wish to retrieve. Segments are numbered from left to right. For example, if your full URL is this:

```
http://www.your-site.com/index.php/news/local/metro/crime_is_up
```

The segment numbers would be this:

1. news
2. local
3. metro
4. crime_is_up

By default the function returns FALSE (boolean) if the segment does not exist. There is an optional second parameter that permits you to set your own default value if the segment is missing. For example, this would tell the function to return the number zero in the event of failure:

```
$product_id = $this->uri->segment(3, 0);
```

It helps avoid having to write code like this:

```

if ($this->uri->segment(3) === FALSE)
{
    $product_id = 0;
}
else
{
    $product_id = $this->uri->segment(3);
}

```

`$this->uri->rsegment(n)`

This function is identical to the previous one, except that it lets you retrieve a specific segment from your re-routed URI in the event you are using CodeIgniter's [URI Routing](#) feature.

`$this->uri->slash_segment(n)`

This function is almost identical to **`$this->uri->segment()`**, except it adds a trailing and/or leading slash based on the second parameter. If the parameter is not used, a trailing slash added. Examples:

```

$this->uri->slash_segment(3);
$this->uri->slash_segment(3, 'leading');
$this->uri->slash_segment(3, 'both');

```

Returns:

1. segment/
2. /segment
3. /segment/

`$this->uri->slash_rsegment(n)`

This function is identical to the previous one, except that it lets you add slashes a specific segment from your re-routed URI in the event you are using CodeIgniter's [URI Routing](#) feature.

`$this->uri->uri_to_assoc(n)`

This function lets you turn URI segments into an associative array of key/value pairs. Consider this URI:

```
index.php/user/search/name/joe/location/UK/gender/male
```

Using this function you can turn the URI into an associative array with this prototype:

```
[array]
(
    'name' => 'joe'
    'location' => 'UK'
    'gender' => 'male'
)
```

The first parameter of the function lets you set an offset. By default it is set to **3** since your URI will normally contain a controller/function in the first and second segments. Example:

```
$array = $this->uri->uri_to_assoc(3);

echo $array['name'];
```

The second parameter lets you set default key names, so that the array returned by the function will always contain expected indexes, even if missing from the URI. Example:

```
$default = array('name', 'gender', 'location', 'type', 'sort');

$array = $this->uri->uri_to_assoc(3, $default);
```

If the URI does not contain a value in your default, an array index will be set to that name, with a value of FALSE.

Lastly, if a corresponding value is not found for a given key (if there is an odd number of URI segments) the value will be set to FALSE (boolean).

`$this->uri->ruri_to_assoc(n)`

This function is identical to the previous one, except that it creates an associative array using the re-routed URI in the event you are using CodeIgniter's [URI Routing](#) feature.

`$this->uri->assoc_to_uri()`

Takes an associative array as input and generates a URI string from it. The array keys will be included in the string. Example:

```
$array = array('product' => 'shoes', 'size' => 'large', 'color' => 'red');  
$str = $this->uri->assoc_to_uri($array);  
  
// Produces: product/shoes/size/large/color/red
```

`$this->uri->uri_string()`

Returns a string with the complete URI. For example, if this is your full URL:

```
http://www.your-site.com/index.php/news/local/345
```

The function would return this:

```
/news/local/345
```

`$this->uri->ruri_string(n)`

This function is identical to the previous one, except that it returns the re-routed URI in the event you are using CodeIgniter's [URI Routing](#) feature.

`$this->uri->total_segments()`

Returns the total number of segments.

`$this->uri->total_rsegments(n)`

This function is identical to the previous one, except that it returns the total number of segments in your re-routed URI in the event you are using CodeIgniter's [URI Routing](#) feature.

`$this->uri->segment_array()`

Returns an array containing the URI segments. For example:

```
$segs = $this->uri->segment_array();  
  
foreach ($segs as $segment)  
{  
    echo $segment;  
    echo '<br />';  
}
```

`$this->uri->rsegment_array(n)`

This function is identical to the previous one, except that it returns the array of segments in your re-routed URI in the event you are using CodeIgniter's [URI Routing](#) feature.

Previous Topic: [Unit Testing Class](#) · [Top of Page](#) · [User Guide Home](#) · Next Topic: [User Agent Class](#)

[CodeIgniter](#) · Copyright © 2007 · [Ellislab, Inc.](#)

URL Helper

The URL Helper file contains functions that assist in working with URLs.

Loading this Helper

This helper is loaded using the following code:

```
$this->load->helper('url');
```

The following functions are available:

site_url()

Returns your site URL, as specified in your config file. The index.php file (or whatever you have set as your site **index_page** in your config file) will be added to the URL, as will any URI segments you pass to the function.

You are encouraged to use this function any time you need to generate a local URL so that your pages become more portable in the event your URL changes.

Segments can be optionally passed to the function as a string or an array. Here is a string example:

```
echo site_url("news/local/123");
```

The above example would return something like: `http://www.your-site.com/index.php/news/local/123`

Here is an example of segments passed as an array:

```
$segments = array('news', 'local', '123');
```

```
echo site_url($segments);
```

base_url()

Returns your site base URL, as specified in your config file. Example:

```
echo base_url();
```

index_page()

Returns your site "index" page, as specified in your config file. Example:

```
echo index_page();
```

anchor()

Creates a standard HTML anchor link based on your local site URL:

```
<a href="http://www.your-site.com">Click Here</a>
```

The tag has three optional parameters:

```
anchor(uri segments, text, attributes)
```

The first parameter can contain any segments you wish appended to the URL. As with the **site_url()** function above, segments can be a string or an array.

Note: If you are building links that are internal to your application do not include the base URL (http://...). This will be added automatically from the information specified in your config file. Include only the URI segments you wish appended to the URL.

The second segment is the text you would like the link to say. If you

leave it blank, the URL will be used.

The third parameter can contain a list of attributes you would like added to the link. The attributes can be a simple string or an associative array.

Here are some examples:

```
echo anchor('news/local/123', 'My News');
```

Would produce: `My News`

```
echo anchor('news/local/123', 'My News', array('title' => 'The best news!'));
```

Would produce: `My News`

anchor_popup()

Nearly identical to the **anchor()** function except that it opens the URL in a new window. You can specify JavaScript window attributes in the third parameter to control how the window is opened. If the third parameter is not set it will simply open a new window with your own browser settings. Here is an example with attributes:

```
$atts = array(
    'width'      => '800',
    'height'     => '600',
    'scrollbars' => 'yes',
    'status'     => 'yes',
    'resizable'  => 'yes',
    'screenx'    => '0',
    'screeny'    => '0'
);

echo anchor_popup(news/local/123, 'Click Me!', $atts);
```

Note: The above attributes are the function defaults so you only need to set the ones that are different from what you need. If you want the function to use all of its defaults simply pass an empty

array in the third parameter:

```
echo anchor_popup('news/local/123', 'Click Me!', array());
```

mailto()

Creates a standard HTML email link. Usage example:

```
echo mailto('me@my-site.com', 'Click Here to Contact Me');
```

As with the **anchor()** tab above, you can set attributes using the third parameter.

safe_mailto()

Identical to the above function except it writes an obfuscated version of the mailto tag using ordinal numbers written with JavaScript to help prevent the email address from being harvested by spam bots.

auto_link()

Automatically turns URLs and email addresses contained in a string into links. Example:

```
$string = auto_link($string);
```

The second parameter determines whether URLs and emails are converted or just one or the other. Default behavior is both if the parameter is not specified

Converts only URLs:

```
$string = auto_link($string, 'url');
```

Converts only Email addresses:

```
$string = auto_link($string, 'email');
```

The third parameter determines whether links are shown in a new window. The value can be TRUE or FALSE (boolean):

```
$string = auto_link($string, 'both', TRUE);
```

url_title()

Takes a string as input and creates a human-friendly URL string. This is useful if, for example, you have a blog in which you'd like to use the title of your entries in the URL. Example:

```
$title = "What's wrong with CSS?";
$url_title = url_title($title);
// Produces: whats-wrong-with-css
```

The second parameter determines the word delimiter. By default dashes are used. Options are: **dash**, or **underscore**:

```
$title = "What's wrong with CSS?";
$url_title = url_title($title, 'underscore');
// Produces: whats_wrong_with_css
```

prep_url()

This function will add **http://** in the event it is missing from a URL. Pass the URL string to the function like this:

```
$url = "www.example.com";
$url = prep_url($url);
```

redirect()

Does a "header redirect" to the local URI specified. Just like other functions in this helper, this one is designed to redirect to a local URL within your site. You will **not** specify the full site URL, but rather simply the URI segments to the controller you want to direct to. The function will build the URL based on your config file values.

The second parameter allows you to choose between the "location" method (default) or the "refresh" method. Location is faster, but on Windows servers it can sometimes be a problem. Example:

```
if ($logged_in == FALSE)
{
    redirect('/login/form/', 'refresh');
}
```

Note: In order for this function to work it must be used before anything is outputted to the browser since it utilizes server headers.

Previous Topic: [Typography Helper](#) · [Top of Page](#) · [User Guide Home](#) · Next Topic: [XML Helper](#)

[CodeIgniter](#) · Copyright © 2007 · [Ellislab, Inc.](#)

URI Routing

Typically there is a one-to-one relationship between a URL string and its corresponding controller class/method. The segments in a URI normally follow this pattern:

```
www.your-site.com/class/function/id/
```

In some instances, however, you may want to remap this relationship so that a different class/function can be called instead of the one corresponding to the URL.

For example, lets say you want your URLs to have this prototype:

```
www.your-site.com/product/1/  
www.your-site.com/product/2/  
www.your-site.com/product/3/  
www.your-site.com/product/4/
```

Normally the second segment of the URL is reserved for the function name, but in the example above it instead has a product ID. To overcome this, CodeIgniter allows you to remap the URI handler.

Setting your own routing rules

Routing rules are defined in your **application/config/routes.php** file. In it you'll see an array called **\$route** that permits you to specify your own routing criteria. Routes can either be specified using **wildcards** or **Regular Expressions**

Wildcards

A typical wildcard route might look something like this:

```
$route['product/:num'] = "catalog/product_lookup";
```

In a route, the array key contains the URI to be matched, while the array value contains the destination it should be re-routed to. In the above example, if the literal word "product" is found in the first segment of the URL, and a number is found in the second segment, the "catalog" class and the "product_lookup" method are instead used.

You can match literal values or you can use two wildcard types:

:num

:any

:num will match a segment containing only numbers.

:any will match a segment containing any character.

Note: Routes will run in the order they are defined. Higher routes will always take precedence over lower ones.

Examples

Here are a few routing examples:

```
$route['journals'] = "blogs";
```

Any URL containing the word "journals" in the first segment will be remapped to the "blogs" class.

```
$route['blog/joe'] = "blogs/users/34";
```

Any URL containing the segments blog/joe will be remapped to the "blogs" class and the "users" method. The ID will be set to "34".

```
$route['product/:any'] = "catalog/product_lookup";
```

Any URL with "product" as the first segment, and anything in the second will be remapped to the "catalog" class and the "product_lookup" method.

Important: Do not use leading/trailing slashes.

Regular Expressions

If you prefer you can use regular expressions to define your routing rules. Any valid regular expression is allowed, as are back-references.

Note: If you use back-references you must use the dollar syntax rather than the double backslash syntax.

A typical RegEx route might look something like this:

```
$route['products/([a-z]+)/(\d+)'] = "$1/id_$2";
```

In the above example, a URI similar to **products/shirts/123** would instead call the **shirts** controller class and the **id_123** function.

You can also mix and match wildcards with regular expressions.

Reserved Routes

There are two reserved routes:

```
$route['default_controller'] = 'welcome';
```

This route indicates which controller class should be loaded if the URI contains no data, which will be the case when people load your root URL. In the above example, the "welcome" class would be loaded. You are encouraged to always have a default route otherwise a 404 page will appear by default.

```
$route['scaffolding_trigger'] = 'scaffolding';
```

This route lets you set a secret word, which when present in the URL, triggers the scaffolding feature. Please read the [Scaffolding](#)

page for details.

Important: The reserved routes must come before any wildcard or regular expression routes.

Previous Topic: [Scaffolding](#) · [Top of Page](#) · [User Guide Home](#) · Next Topic: [Error Handling](#)

[CodeIgniter](#) · Copyright © 2007 · [Ellislab, Inc.](#)

Controllers

Controllers are the heart of your application, as they determine how HTTP requests should be handled.

- [What is a Controller?](#)
- [Hello World](#)
- [Functions](#)
- [Passing URI Segments to Your Functions](#)
- [Defining a Default Controller](#)
- [Remapping Function Calls](#)
- [Controlling Output Data](#)
- [Private Functions](#)
- [Organizing Controllers into Sub-folders](#)
- [Class Constructors](#)
- [Reserved Function Names](#)

What is a Controller?

A Controller is simply a class file that is named in a way that can be associated with a URI.

Consider this URI:

```
www.your-site.com/index.php/blog/
```

In the above example, CodeIgniter would attempt to find a controller named **blog.php** and load it.

When a controller's name matches the first segment of a URI, it will be loaded.

Let's try it: Hello World!

Let's create a simple controller so you can see it in action. Using your text editor, create a file called **blog.php**, and put the following code in it:

Then save the file to your **application/controllers/** folder.

Now visit the your site using a URL similar to this:

```
www.your-site.com/index.php/blog/
```

If you did it right, you should see **Hello World!**.

Note: Class names must start with an uppercase letter. In other words, this is valid:

```
<?php
class Blog extends Controller {

}
?>
```

This is **not** valid:

```
<?php
class blog extends Controller {

}
?>
```

Also, always make sure your controller **extends** the parent controller class so that it can inherit all its functions.

Functions

In the above example the function name is **index()**. The "index" function is always loaded by default if the **second segment** of the URI is empty. Another way to show your "Hello World" message would be this:

```
www.your-site.com/index.php/blog/index/
```

The second segment of the URI determines which function in the controller gets called.

Let's try it. Add a new function to your controller:

Now load the following URL to see the **comment** function:

```
www.your-site.com/index.php/blog/comments/
```

You should see your new message.

Passing URI Segments to your Functions

If your URI contains more than two segments they will be passed to your function as parameters.

For example, let's say you have a URI like this:

```
www.your-site.com/index.php/products/shoes/sandals/123
```

Your function will be passed URI segments 3 and 4 ("sandals" and "123"):

```
<?php
class Products extends Controller {

    function shoes($sandals, $id)
    {
        echo $sandals;
        echo $id;
    }
}
?>
```

Important: If you are using the [URI Routing](#) feature, the segments passed to your function will be the re-routed ones.

Defining a Default Controller

CodeIgniter can be told to load a default controller when a URI is not present, as will be the case when only your site root URL is requested. To specify a default controller, open your **application/config/routes.php** file and set this variable:

```
$route['default_controller'] = 'Blog';
```

Where **Blog** is the name of the controller class you want used. If you now load your main index.php file without specifying any URI segments you'll see your Hello World message by default.

Remapping Function Calls

As noted above, the second segment of the URI typically determines which function in the controller gets called. CodeIgniter permits you to override this behavior through the use of the **_remap()** function:

```
function _remap()
{
    // Some code here...
}
```

Important: If your controller contains a function named **_remap()**, it will **always** get called regardless of what your URI contains. It overrides the normal behavior in which the URI determines which function is called, allowing you to define your own function routing rules.

The overridden function call (typically the second segment of the URI) will be passed as a parameter the **_remap()** function:

```
function _remap($method)
{
    if ($method == 'some_method')
    {
        $this->$method();
    }
    else
    {
        $this->default_method();
    }
}
```

Processing Output

CodeIgniter has an output class that takes care of sending your final rendered data to the web browser automatically. More information on this can be found in the [Views](#) and [Output class](#) pages. In some cases, however, you might want to post-process the finalized data in some way and send it to the browser yourself. CodeIgniter permits you to add a function named **_output()** to your controller that will receive the finalized output data.

Important: If your controller contains a function named **_output()**, it will **always** be called by the output class instead of echoing the finalized data directly. The first parameter of the function will contain the finalized output.

Here is an example:

```
function _output($output)
{
    echo $output;
}
```

Please note that your **_output()** function will receive the data in its finalized state. Benchmark and memory usage data will be rendered, cache files written (if you have caching enabled), and headers will be sent (if you use that [feature](#)) before it is handed off to the _output() function. If you are using this feature the page execution timer and memory usage stats might not be perfectly accurate since they will not take into account any further processing you do. For an alternate way to control output *before* any of the final processing is done, please see the available methods in the [Output Class](#).

Private Functions

In some cases you may want certain functions hidden from public access. To make a function private, simply add an underscore as the name prefix and it will not be served via a URL request. For example, if you were to have a function like this:

```
function _utility()
{
    // some code
}
```

Trying to access it via the URL, like this, will not work:

```
www.your-site.com/index.php/blog/_utility/
```

Organizing Your Controllers into Sub-folders

If you are building a large application you might find it convenient to

organize your controllers into sub-folders. CodeIgniter permits you to do this.

Simply create folders within your **application/controllers** directory and place your controller classes within them.

Note: When using this feature the first segment of your URI must specify the folder. For example, lets say you have a controller located here:

```
application/controllers/products/shoes.php
```

To call the above controller your URI will look something like this:

```
www.your-site.com/index.php/products/shoes/123
```

Each of your sub-folders may contain a default controller which will be called if the URL contains only the sub-folder. Simply name your default controller as specified in your **application/config/routes.php** file

CodeIgniter also permits you to remap your URIs using its [URI Routing](#) feature.

Class Constructors

If you intend to use a constructor in any of your Controllers, you **MUST** place the following line of code in it:

```
parent::Controller();
```

The reason this line is necessary is because your local constructor will be overriding the one in the parent controller class so we need to manually call it.

If you are not familiar with constructors, in PHP 4, a *constructor* is simply a function that has the exact same name as the class:

```
<?php  
class Blog extends Controller {
```

```
function Blog()
{
    parent::Controller();
}
?>
```

In PHP 5, constructors use the following syntax:

```
<?php
class Blog extends Controller {

    function __construct()
    {
        parent::Controller();
    }
}
?>
```

Constructors are useful if you need to set some default values, or run a default process when your class is instantiated. Constructors can't return a value, but they can do some default work.

Reserved Function Names

Since your controller classes will extend the main application controller you must be careful not to name your functions identically to the ones used by that class, otherwise your local functions will override them. The following is a list of reserved names. Do not name your controller functions any of these:

- Controller
- CI_Base
- _ci_initialize
- _ci_scaffolding

If you are running PHP 4 there are some additional reserved names. These ONLY apply if you are running PHP 4.

- CI_Loader
- config

- database
- file
- helper
- helpers
- language
- library
- model
- plugin
- plugins
- scaffolding
- script
- view
- vars
- `_ci_assign_to_models`
- `_ci_autoloader`
- `_ci_init_class`
- `_ci_init_scaffolding`
- `_ci_is_instance`
- `_ci_load`
- `_ci_load_class`
- `_ci_object_to_array`

That's it!

That, in a nutshell, is all there is to know about controllers.

Previous Topic: [CodeIgniter URLs](#) · [Top of Page](#) · [User Guide Home](#) · Next Topic: [Views](#)

[CodeIgniter](#) · Copyright © 2007 · [Ellislab, Inc.](#)

Downloading CodeIgniter

- [CodeIgniter V 1.5.4 \(Current version\)](#)
- [CodeIgniter V 1.5.3](#)
- [CodeIgniter V 1.5.2](#)
- [CodeIgniter V 1.5.1](#)
- [CodeIgniter V 1.4.1](#)
- [CodeIgniter V 1.3.3](#)
- [CodeIgniter V 1.3.2](#)
- [CodeIgniter V 1.3.1](#)
- [CodeIgniter V 1.3](#)
- [CodeIgniter V 1.2](#)
- [CodeIgniter V 1.1](#)
- [CodeIgniter V 1.0](#)

Subversion Server

Public subversion access is now available via <http://dev.ellislab.com/svn/CodeIgniter/trunk> please note that while every effort is made to keep this codebase functional, we cannot guarantee the functionality of code taken from the repository.

[Subversion](#) is a version control system.

Previous Topic: [Credits](#) · [Top of Page](#) · [User Guide Home](#) · Next Topic: [Installation Instructions](#)

[CodeIgniter](#) · Copyright © 2007 · [Ellislab, Inc.](#)

Upgrading from 1.5.3 to 1.5.4

Before performing an update you should take your site offline by replacing the index.php file with a static one.

Step 1: Update your CodeIgniter files

Replace these files and directories in your "system" folder with the new versions:

- **system/application/config/mimes.php**
- **system/codeigniter**
- **system/database**
- **system/helpers**
- **system/libraries**
- **system/plugins**

Note: If you have any custom developed files in these folders please make copies of them first.

Step 2: Add charset to your config.php

Add the following to system/application/config/config.php

```
/*
|-----
| Default Character Set
|-----
|
| This determines which character set is used by default in various methods
| that require a character set to be provided.
|
*/
$config['charset'] = "UTF-8";
```

Step 3: Autoloading language files

If you want to autoload any language files, add this line to system/

application/config/autoload.php

```
$autoload['language'] = array();
```

Step 4: Update your user guide

Please also replace your local copy of the user guide with the new version.

Previous Topic: [Installation Instructions](#) · [Top of Page](#) · [User Guide Home](#) · Next Topic: [CodeIgniter at a Glance](#)

[CodeIgniter](#) · Copyright © 2007 · [Ellislab, Inc.](#)

Upgrading from 1.5.2 to 1.5.3

Before performing an update you should take your site offline by replacing the index.php file with a static one.

Step 1: Update your CodeIgniter files

Replace these files and directories in your "system" folder with the new versions:

- **system/database/drivers**
- **system/helpers**
- **system/libraries/Input.php**
- **system/libraries/Loader.php**
- **system/libraries/Profiler.php**
- **system/libraries/Table.php**

Note: If you have any custom developed files in these folders please make copies of them first.

Step 2: Update your user guide

Please also replace your local copy of the user guide with the new version.

Previous Topic: [Installation Instructions](#) · [Top of Page](#) · [User Guide Home](#) · Next Topic: [CodeIgniter at a Glance](#)

[CodeIgniter](#) · Copyright © 2007 · [Ellislab, Inc.](#)

Upgrading from 1.5.0 to 1.5.2

Note: The instructions on this page assume you are running version 1.5.0 or 1.5.1. If you have not upgraded to that version please do so first.

Before performing an update you should take your site offline by replacing the index.php file with a static one.

Step 1: Update your CodeIgniter files

Replace these files and directories in your "system" folder with the new versions:

- **system/helpers/download_helper.php**
- **system/helpers/form_helper.php**
- **system/libraries/Table.php**
- **system/libraries/User_agent.php**
- **system/libraries/Exceptions.php**
- **system/libraries/Input.php**
- **system/libraries/Router.php**
- **system/libraries/Loader.php**
- **system/libraries/Image_lib.php**
- **system/language/english/unit_test_lang.php**
- **system/database/DB_active_rec.php**
- **system/database/drivers/mysqli/mysqli_driver.php**
- **codeigniter/**

Note: If you have any custom developed files in these folders please make copies of them first.

Step 2: Update your user guide

Please also replace your local copy of the user guide with the new version.

Previous Topic: [Installation Instructions](#) · [Top of Page](#) · [User Guide Home](#) · Next Topic: [CodeIgniter at a Glance](#)

[CodeIgniter](#) · Copyright © 2007 · [Ellislab, Inc.](#)

Upgrading from 1.4.1 to 1.5.0

Note: The instructions on this page assume you are running version 1.4.1. If you have not upgraded to that version please do so first.

Before performing an update you should take your site offline by replacing the index.php file with a static one.

Step 1: Update your CodeIgniter files

Replace these files and directories in your "system" folder with the new versions:

- **application/config/user_agents.php** (new file for 1.5)
- **application/config/smileys.php** (new file for 1.5)
- **codeigniter/**
- **database/** (new folder for 1.5. Replaces the "drivers" folder)
- **helpers/**
- **language/**
- **libraries/**
- **scaffolding/**

Note: If you have any custom developed files in these folders please make copies of them first.

Step 2: Update your database.php file

Open your **application/config/database.php** file and add these new items:

```
$db['default']['cache_on'] = FALSE;  
$db['default']['cachedir'] = '';
```

Step 3: Update your config.php file

Open your **application/config/config.php** file and **ADD** these new items:

```

/*
|-----|
| Class Extension Prefix
|-----|
|
| This item allows you to set the filename/classname prefix when extending
| native libraries. For more information please see the user guide:
|
| http://www.codeigniter.com/user\_guide/general/core\_classes.html
| http://www.codeigniter.com/user\_guide/general/creating\_libraries.html
|
*/
$config['subclass_prefix'] = 'MY_';

/*
|-----|
| Rewrite PHP Short Tags
|-----|
|
| If your PHP installation does not have short tag support enabled CI
| can rewrite the tags on-the-fly, enabling you to utilize that syntax
| in your view files. Options are TRUE or FALSE (boolean)
|
*/
$config['rewrite_short_tags'] = FALSE;

```

In that same file **REMOVE** this item:

```

/*
|-----|
| Enable/Disable Error Logging
|-----|
|
| If you would like errors or debug messages logged set this variable to
| TRUE (boolean). Note: You must set the file permissions on the "logs" folder
| such that it is writable.
|
*/
$config['log_errors'] = FALSE;

```

Error logging is now disabled simply by setting the threshold to zero.

Step 4: Update your main index.php file

If you are running a stock **index.php** file simply replace your version with the new one.

If your **index.php** file has internal modifications, please add your modifications to the new file and use it.

Step 5: Update your user guide

Please also replace your local copy of the user guide with the new version.

Previous Topic: [Installation Instructions](#) · [Top of Page](#) · [User Guide Home](#) · Next Topic: [CodeIgniter at a Glance](#)

[CodeIgniter](#) · Copyright © 2007 · [Ellislab, Inc.](#)

Upgrading from 1.4.0 to 1.4.1

Note: The instructions on this page assume you are running version 1.4.0. If you have not upgraded to that version please do so first.

Before performing an update you should take your site offline by replacing the index.php file with a static one.

Step 1: Update your CodeIgniter files

Replace the following directories in your "system" folder with the new versions:

Note: If you have any custom developed files in these folders please make copies of them first.

- codeigniter
- drivers
- helpers
- libraries

Step 2: Update your config.php file

Open your **application/config/config.php** file and add this new item:

```
/*
|-----
| Output Compression
|-----
|
| Enables Gzip output compression for faster page loads.  When enabled,
| the output class will test whether your server supports Gzip.
| Even if it does, however, not all browsers support compression
| so enable only if you are reasonably sure your visitors can handle it.
|
| VERY IMPORTANT:  If you are getting a blank page when compression is enabled it
| means you are prematurely outputting something to your browser. It could
| even be a line of whitespace at the end of one of your scripts. For
| compression to work, nothing can be sent before the output buffer is called
```

```
| by the output class. Do not "echo" any values with compression enabled.  
|  
*/  
$config['compress_output'] = FALSE;
```

Step 3: Rename an Autoload Item

Open the following file: **[application/config/autoload.php](#)**

Find this array item:

```
$autoload['core'] = array();
```

And rename it to this:

```
$autoload['libraries'] = array();
```

This change was made to improve clarity since some users were not sure that their own libraries could be auto-loaded.

Step 4: Update your user guide

Please also replace your local copy of the user guide with the new version.

Previous Topic: [Installation Instructions](#) · [Top of Page](#) · [User Guide Home](#) · Next Topic: [CodeIgniter at a Glance](#)

[CodeIgniter](#) · Copyright © 2007 · [Ellislab, Inc.](#)

Upgrading from 1.3.3 to 1.4.0

Note: The instructions on this page assume you are running version 1.3.3. If you have not upgraded to that version please do so first.

Before performing an update you should take your site offline by replacing the index.php file with a static one.

Step 1: Update your CodeIgniter files

Replace the following directories in your "system" folder with the new versions:

Note: If you have any custom developed files in these folders please make copies of them first.

- application/config/**hooks.php**
- application/config/**mimes.php**
- codeigniter
- drivers
- helpers
- init
- language
- libraries
- scaffolding

Step 2: Update your config.php file

Open your **application/config/config.php** file and add these new items:

```
/*
|-----
| Enable/Disable System Hooks
|-----
|
| If you would like to use the "hooks" feature you must enable it by
```

```
| setting this variable to TRUE (boolean). See the user guide for details.  
|  
*/  
$config['enable_hooks'] = FALSE;  
  
/*  
-----  
Allowed URL Characters  
-----  
  
This lets you specify which characters are permitted within your URLs.  
When someone tries to submit a URL with disallowed characters they will  
get a warning message.  
  
As a security measure you are STRONGLY encouraged to restrict URLs to  
as few characters as possible. By default only these are allowed: a-z 0-9~%.:_-  
  
Leave blank to allow all characters -- but only if you are insane.  
  
DO NOT CHANGE THIS UNLESS YOU FULLY UNDERSTAND THE REPERCUSSIONS!!  
*/  
$config['permitted_uri_chars'] = 'a-z 0-9~%.:_-';
```

Step 3: Update your user guide

Please also replace your local copy of the user guide with the new version.

Previous Topic: [Installation Instructions](#) · [Top of Page](#) · [User Guide Home](#) · Next Topic: [CodeIgniter at a Glance](#)

[CodeIgniter](#) · Copyright © 2007 · [Ellislab, Inc.](#)

Upgrading from 1.3.2 to 1.3.3

Note: The instructions on this page assume you are running version 1.3.2. If you have not upgraded to that version please do so first.

Before performing an update you should take your site offline by replacing the index.php file with a static one.

Step 1: Update your CodeIgniter files

Replace the following directories in your "system" folder with the new versions:

Note: If you have any custom developed files in these folders please make copies of them first.

- codeigniter
- drivers
- helpers
- init
- libraries

Step 2: Update your Models

If you are **NOT** using CodeIgniter's [Models](#) feature disregard this step.

As of version 1.3.3, CodeIgniter does **not** connect automatically to your database when a model is loaded. This allows you greater flexibility in determining which databases you would like used with your models. If your application is not connecting to your database prior to a model being loaded you will have to update your code. There are several options for connecting, [as described here](#).

Step 3: Update your user guide

Please also replace your local copy of the user guide with the new version.

Previous Topic: [Installation Instructions](#) · [Top of Page](#) · [User Guide Home](#) · Next Topic: [CodeIgniter at a Glance](#)

[CodeIgniter](#) · Copyright © 2007 · [Ellislab, Inc.](#)

Upgrading from 1.3.1 to 1.3.2

Note: The instructions on this page assume you are running version 1.3.1. If you have not upgraded to that version please do so first.

Before performing an update you should take your site offline by replacing the index.php file with a static one.

Step 1: Update your CodeIgniter files

Replace the following directories in your "system" folder with the new versions:

Note: If you have any custom developed files in these folders please make copies of them first.

- drivers
- init
- libraries

Step 2: Update your user guide

Please also replace your local copy of the user guide with the new version.

Previous Topic: [Installation Instructions](#) · [Top of Page](#) · [User Guide Home](#) · Next Topic: [CodeIgniter at a Glance](#)

[CodeIgniter](#) · Copyright © 2007 · [Ellislab, Inc.](#)

Upgrading from 1.3 to 1.3.1

Note: The instructions on this page assume you are running version 1.3. If you have not upgraded to that version please do so first.

Before performing an update you should take your site offline by replacing the index.php file with a static one.

Step 1: Update your CodeIgniter files

Replace the following directories in your "system" folder with the new versions:

Note: If you have any custom developed files in these folders please make copies of them first.

- drivers
- init/init_unit_test.php (new for 1.3.1)
- language/
- libraries
- scaffolding

Step 2: Update your user guide

Please also replace your local copy of the user guide with the new version.

Previous Topic: [Installation Instructions](#) · [Top of Page](#) · [User Guide Home](#) · Next Topic: [CodeIgniter at a Glance](#)

[CodeIgniter](#) · Copyright © 2007 · [Ellislab, Inc.](#)

Upgrading from 1.2 to 1.3

Note: The instructions on this page assume you are running version 1.2. If you have not upgraded to that version please do so first.

Before performing an update you should take your site offline by replacing the index.php file with a static one.

Step 1: Update your CodeIgniter files

Replace the following directories in your "system" folder with the new versions:

Note: If you have any custom developed files in these folders please make copies of them first.

- application/**models/** (new for 1.3)
- codeigniter (new for 1.3)
- drivers
- helpers
- init
- language
- libraries
- plugins
- scaffolding

Step 2: Update your error files

Version 1.3 contains two new error templates located in **application/errors**, and for naming consistency the other error templates have been renamed.

If you **have not** customized any of the error templates simply replace this folder:

- application/errors/

If you **have** customized your error templates, rename them as follows:

- 404.php = error_404.php
- error.php = error_general.php
- error_db.php (new)
- error_php.php (new)

Step 3: Update your index.php file

Please open your main **index.php** file (located at your root). At the very bottom of the file, change this:

```
require_once BASEPATH.'libraries/Front_controller'.EXT;
```

To this:

```
require_once BASEPATH.'codeigniter/CodeIgniter'.EXT;
```

Step 4: Update your config.php file

Open your **application/config/config.php** file and add these new items:

```
/*
|-----
| URL suffix
|-----
|
| This option allows you to add a suffix to all URLs.
| For example, if a URL is this:
|
| www.your-site.com/index.php/products/view/shoes
|
| You can optionally add a suffix, like ".html",
| making the page appear to be of a certain type:
|
| www.your-site.com/index.php/products/view/shoes.html
|
*/
$config['url_suffix'] = "";

/*
|-----
| Enable Query Strings
```

By default CodeIgniter uses search-engine and human-friendly segment based URLs:

`www.your-site.com/who/what/where/`

You can optionally enable standard query string based URLs:

`www.your-site.com?who=me&what=something&where=here`

Options are: TRUE or FALSE (boolean)

The two other items let you set the query string "words" that will invoke your controllers and functions:

`www.your-site.com/index.php?c=controller&m=function`

`*/`

```
$config['enable_query_strings'] = FALSE;
```

```
$config['controller_trigger'] = 'c';
```

```
$config['function_trigger'] = 'm';
```

Step 5: Update your database.php file

Open your **application/config/database.php** file and add these new items:

```
$db['default']['dbprefix'] = '';  
$db['default']['active_r'] = TRUE;
```

Step 6: Update your user guide

Please also replace your local copy of the user guide with the new version.

Previous Topic: [Installation Instructions](#) · [Top of Page](#) · [User Guide Home](#) · Next Topic: [CodeIgniter at a Glance](#)

CodeIgniter · Copyright © 2007 · Ellislab, Inc.

Upgrading From Beta 1.0 to Final 1.2

To upgrade to Version 1.2 please replace the following directories with the new versions:

Note: If you have any custom developed files in these folders please make copies of them first.

- drivers
- helpers
- init
- language
- libraries
- plugins
- scaffolding

Please also replace your local copy of the user guide with the new version.

Previous Topic: [Installation Instructions](#) · [Top of Page](#) · [User Guide Home](#) · Next Topic: [CodeIgniter at a Glance](#)

[CodeIgniter](#) · Copyright © 2007 · [Ellislab, Inc.](#)

Upgrading From Beta 1.0 to Beta 1.1

To upgrade to Beta 1.1 please perform the following steps:

Step 1: Replace your index file

Replace your main **index.php** file with the new index.php file. Note: If you have renamed your "system" folder you will need to edit this info in the new file.

Step 2: Relocate your config folder

This version of CodeIgniter now permits multiple sets of "applications" to all share a common set of backend files. In order to enable each application to have its own configuration values, the **config** directory must now reside inside of your **application** folder, so please move it there.

Step 3: Replace directories

Replace the following directories with the new versions:

- drivers
- helpers
- init
- libraries
- scaffolding

Step 4: Add the calendar language file

There is a new language file corresponding to the new calendaring class which must be added to your language folder. Add the following item to your version: **language/english/calendar_lang.php**

Step 5: Edit your config file

The original **application/config/config.php** file has a typo in it Open the file and look for the items related to cookies:

```
$conf['cookie_prefix'] = "";  
$conf['cookie_domain'] = "";  
$conf['cookie_path'] = "/";
```

Change the array name from **\$conf** to **\$config**, like this:

```
$config['cookie_prefix'] = "";  
$config['cookie_domain'] = "";  
$config['cookie_path'] = "/";
```

Lastly, add the following new item to the config file (and edit the option if needed):

```
/*  
|-----  
| URI PROTOCOL  
|-----  
|  
| This item determines which server global  
| should be used to retrieve the URI string. The  
| default setting of "auto" works for most servers.  
| If your links do not seem to work, try one of  
| the other delicious flavors:  
|  
| 'auto' Default - auto detects  
| 'path_info' Uses the PATH_INFO  
| 'query_string' Uses the QUERY_STRING  
*/  
  
$config['uri_protocol'] = "auto";
```

Previous Topic: [Installation Instructions](#) · [Top of Page](#) · [User Guide Home](#) · Next Topic: [CodeIgniter at a Glance](#)

[CodeIgniter](#) · Copyright © 2007 · [Ellislab, Inc.](#)

Troubleshooting

If you find that no matter what you put in your URL only your default page is loading, it might be that your server does not support the PATH_INFO variable needed to serve search-engine friendly URLs. As a first step, open your **application/config/config.php** file and look for the **URI Protocol** information. It will recommend that you try a couple alternate settings. If it still doesn't work after you've tried this you'll need to force CodeIgniter to add a question mark to your URLs. To do this open your **application/config/config.php** file and change this:

```
$config['index_page'] = "index.php";
```

To this:

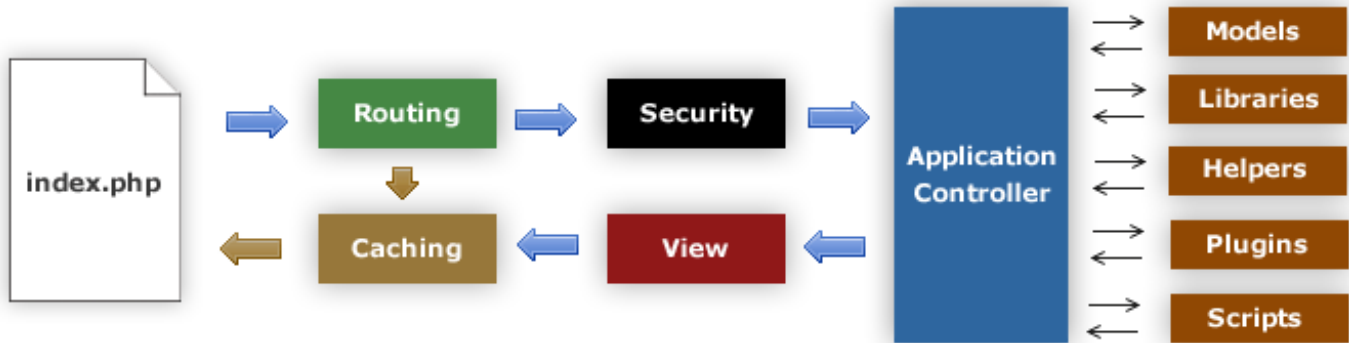
```
$config['index_page'] = "index.php?";
```

[Previous Topic: Upgrading Instructions](#) · [Top of Page](#) · [User Guide Home](#) · [Next Topic: CodeIgniter at a Glance](#)

[CodeIgniter](#) · Copyright © 2007 · [Ellislab, Inc.](#)

Application Flow Chart

The following graphic illustrates how data flows throughout the system:



1. The index.php serves as the front controller, initializing the base resources needed to run CodeIgniter.
2. The Router examines the HTTP request to determine what should be done with it.
3. If a cache file exists, it is sent directly to the browser, bypassing the normal system execution.
4. Security. Before the application controller is loaded, the HTTP request and any user submitted data is filtered for security.
5. The Controller loads the model, core libraries, plugins, helpers, and any other resources needed to process the specific request.
6. The finalized View is rendered then sent to the web browser to be seen. If caching is enabled, the view is cached first so that on subsequent requests it can be served.

Previous Topic: [CodeIgniter Features](#) · [Top of Page](#) · [User Guide Home](#) · Next Topic: [Model-View-Controller](#)

[CodeIgniter](#) · Copyright © 2007 · [Ellislab, Inc.](#)

Unit Testing Class

Unit testing is an approach to software development in which tests are written for each function in your application. If you are not familiar with the concept you might do a little googling on the subject.

CodeIgniter's Unit Test class is quite simple, consisting of an evaluation function and two result functions. It's not intended to be a full-blown test suite but rather a simple mechanism to evaluate your code to determine if it is producing the correct data type and result.

Initializing the Class

Like most other classes in CodeIgniter, the Unit Test class is initialized in your controller using the **`$this->load->library`** function:

```
$this->load->library('unit_test');
```

Once loaded, the Unit Test object will be available using: **`$this->unit`**

Running Tests

Running a test involves supplying a test and an expected result to the following function:

```
$this->unit->run( test, expected result, 'test name' );
```

Where **test** is the result of the code you wish to test, **expected result** is the data type you expect, and **test name** is an optional name you can give your test. Example:

```
$test = 1 + 1;  
  
$expected_result = 2;  
  
$test_name = 'Adds one plus one';  
  
$this->unit->run($test, $expected_result, $test_name);
```

The expected result you supply can either be a literal match, or a data type match. Here's an example of a literal:

```
$this->unit->run('Foo', 'Foo');
```

Here is an example of a data type match:

```
$this->unit->run('Foo', 'is_string');
```

Notice the use of "is_string" in the second parameter? This tells the function to evaluate whether your test is producing a string as the result. Here is a list of allowed comparison types:

- is_string
- is_bool
- is_true
- is_false
- is_int
- is_numeric
- is_float
- is_double
- is_array
- is_null

Generating Reports

You can either display results after each test, or you can run several tests and generate a report at the end. To show a report directly simply echo or return the **run** function:

```
echo $this->unit->run($test, $expected_result);
```

To run a full report of all tests, use this:

```
echo $this->unit->report();
```

The report will be formatted in an HTML table for viewing. If you prefer the raw data you can retrieve an array using:

```
echo $this->unit->result();
```

Strict Mode

By default the unit test class evaluates literal matches loosely. Consider this example:

```
$this->unit->run(1, TRUE);
```

The test is evaluating an integer, but the expected result is a boolean. PHP, however, due to it's loose data-typing will evaluate the above code as TRUE using a normal equality test:

```
if (1 == TRUE) echo 'This evaluates as true';
```

If you prefer, you can put the unit test class in to strict mode, which will compare the data type as well as the value:

```
if (1 === TRUE) echo 'This evaluates as FALSE';
```

To enable strict mode use this:

```
$this->unit->use_strict(TRUE);
```

Enabling/Disabling Unit Testing

If you would like to leave some testing in place in your scripts, but not have it run unless you need it, you can disable unit testing using:

```
$this->unit->active(FALSE)
```

Creating a Template

If you would like your test results formatted differently then the default you can set your own template. Here is an example of a simple template. Note the required pseudo-variables:

```
$str = '  
<table border="0" cellpadding="4" cellspacing="1">  
  {rows}  
    <tr>  
      <td>{item}</td>  
      <td>{result}</td>  
    </tr>  
  {/rows}  
</table>';  
  
$this->unit->set_template($str);
```

Note: Your template must be declared **before** running the unit test process.

Previous Topic: [Template Parser Class](#) · [Top of Page](#) · [User Guide Home](#) · Next Topic: [URI Class](#)

[CodeIgniter](#) · Copyright © 2007 · [Ellislab, Inc.](#)

User Agent Class

The User Agent Class provides functions that help identify information about the browser, mobile device, or robot visiting your site. In addition you can get referrer information as well as language and supported character-set information.

Initializing the Class

Like most other classes in CodeIgniter, the User Agent class is initialized in your controller using the **`$this->load->library`** function:

```
$this->load->library('user_agent');
```

Once loaded, the object will be available using: **`$this->agent`**

User Agent Definitions

The user agent name definitions are located in a config file located at: **`application/config/user_agents.php`**. You may add items to the various user agent arrays if needed.

Example

When the User Agent class is initialized it will attempt to determine whether the user agent browsing your site is a web browser, a mobile device, or a robot. It will also gather the platform information if it is available.

```
$this->load->library('user_agent');

if ($this->agent->is_browser())
{
    $agent = $this->agent->browser().' '.$this->agent->version();
}
```

```

}
elseif ($this->agent->is_robot())
{
    $agent = $this->agent->robot();
}
elseif ($this->agent->is_mobile())
{
    $agent = $this->agent->mobile();
}
else
{
    $agent = 'Unidentified User Agent';
}

echo $agent;

echo $this->agent->platform(); // Platform info (Windows, Linux, Mac, etc.)

```

Function Reference

`$this->agent->is_browser()`

Returns TRUE/FALSE (boolean) if the user agent is a known web browser.

`$this->agent->is_mobile()`

Returns TRUE/FALSE (boolean) if the user agent is a known mobile device.

`$this->agent->is_robot()`

Returns TRUE/FALSE (boolean) if the user agent is a known robot.

Note: The user agent library only contains the most common robot definitions. It is not a complete list of bots. There are hundreds of them so searching for each one would not be very efficient. If you find that some bots that commonly visit your site are missing from the list you can add them to your **`application/config/user_agents.php`** file.

`$this->agent->is_referral()`

Returns TRUE/FALSE (boolean) if the user agent was referred from another site.

`$this->agent->browser()`

Returns a string containing the name of the web browser viewing your site.

`$this->agent->version()`

Returns a string containing the version number of the web browser viewing your site.

`$this->agent->mobile()`

Returns a string containing the name of the mobile device viewing your site.

`$this->agent->robot()`

Returns a string containing the name of the robot viewing your site.

`$this->agent->platform()`

Returns a string containing the platform viewing your site (Linux, Windows, OS X, etc.).

`$this->agent->referrer()`

The referrer, if the user agent was referred from another site. Typically you'll test for this as follows:

```
if ($this->agent->is_referral())  
{  
    echo $this->agent->referrer();  
}
```

```
}
```

`$this->agent->agent_string()`

Returns a string containing the full user agent string. Typically it will be something like this:

```
Mozilla/5.0 (Macintosh; U; Intel Mac OS X; en-US; rv: 1.8.0.4) Gecko/20060613  
Camino/1.0.2
```

`$this->agent->accept_lang()`

Lets you determine if the user agent accepts a particular language. Example:

```
if ($this->agent->accept_lang('en'))  
{  
    echo 'You accept English!';  
}
```

Note: This function is not typically very reliable since some browsers do not provide language info, and even among those that do, it is not always accurate.

`$this->agent->accept_charset()`

Lets you determine if the user agent accepts a particular character set. Example:

```
if ($this->agent->accept_charset('utf-8'))  
{  
    echo 'You browser supports UTF-8!';  
}
```

Note: This function is not typically very reliable since some

browsers do not provide character-set info, and even among those that do, it is not always accurate.

Previous Topic: [URI Class](#) · [Top of Page](#) · [User Guide Home](#) · Next Topic: [Validation Class](#)

[CodeIgniter](#) · Copyright © 2007 · [Ellislab, Inc.](#)

Typography Helper

The Typography Helper file contains functions that help your format text in semantically relevant ways.

Loading this Helper

This helper is loaded using the following code:

```
$this->load->helper('typography');
```

The following functions are available:

auto_typography()

Formats text so that it is semantically and typographically correct HTML. Takes a string as input and returns it with the following formatting:

- Surrounds paragraphs within `<p></p>` (looks for double line breaks to identify paragraphs).
- Single line breaks are converted to `
`, except those that appear within `<pre>` tags.
- Block level elements, like `<div>` tags, are not wrapped within paragraphs, but their contained text is if it contains paragraphs.
- Quotes are converted to correctly facing curly quote entities, except those that appear within tags.
- Apostrophes are converted to curly apostrophy entities.
- Double dashes (either like `-- this` or `like--this`) are converted to em—dashes.
- Three consecutive periods either preceding or following a word are converted to ellipsis...
- Double spaces following sentences are converted to non-breaking spaces to mimic double spacing.

Usage example:

```
$string = auto_typography($string);
```

Note: Typographic formatting can be processor intensive, particularly if you have a lot of content being formatted. If you choose to use this function you may want to consider [caching](#) your pages.

nl2br_except_pre()

Converts newlines to
 tags unless they appear within <pre> tags. This function is identical to the native PHP [nl2br\(\)](#) function, except that it ignores <pre> tags.

Usage example:

```
$string = nl2br_except_pre($string);
```

Previous Topic: [Text Helper](#) · [Top of Page](#) · [User Guide Home](#) · Next Topic: [URL Helper](#)

[CodeIgniter](#) · Copyright © 2007 · [Ellislab, Inc.](#)

XML Helper

The XML Helper file contains functions that assist in working with XML data.

Loading this Helper

This helper is loaded using the following code:

```
$this->load->helper('xml');
```

The following functions are available:

xml_convert('string')

Takes a string as input and converts the following reserved XML characters to entities:

Ampersands: &

Less than and greater than characters: < >

Single and double quotes: ' "

Dashes: -

This function ignores ampersands if they are part of existing character entities. Example:

```
$string = xml_convert($string);
```

[Previous Topic: URL Helper](#) · [Top of Page](#) · [User Guide Home](#)

[CodeIgniter](#) · Copyright © 2007 · [Ellislab, Inc.](#)

Scaffolding

CodeIgniter's Scaffolding feature provides a fast and very convenient way to add, edit, or delete information in your database during development.

Very Important: Scaffolding is intended for development use only. It provides very little security other than a "secret" word, so anyone who has access to your CodeIgniter site can potentially edit or delete your information. If you use scaffolding make sure you disable it immediately after you are through using it. DO NOT leave it enabled on a live site. And please, set a secret word before you use it.

Why would someone use scaffolding?

Here's a typical scenario: You create a new database table during development and you'd like a quick way to insert some data into it to work with. Without scaffolding your choices are either to write some inserts using the command line or to use a database management tool like phpMyAdmin. With CodeIgniter's scaffolding feature you can quickly add some data using its browser interface. And when you are through using the data you can easily delete it.

Setting a Secret Word

Before enabling scaffolding please take a moment to set a secret word. This word, when encountered in your URL, will launch the scaffolding interface, so please pick something obscure that no one is likely to guess.

To set a secret word, open your **application/config/routes.php** file and look for this item:

```
$route['scaffolding_trigger'] = '';
```

Once you've found it add your own unique word.

Note: The scaffolding word can **not** start with an underscore.

Enabling Scaffolding

Note: The information on this page assumes you already know how [controllers](#) work, and that you have a working one available. It also assumes you have configured CodeIgniter to auto-connect to your [database](#). If not, the information here won't be very relevant, so you are encouraged to go through those sections first. Lastly, it assumes you understand what a class constructor is. If not, read the last section of the [controllers](#) page.

To enable scaffolding you will initialize it in your constructor like this:

```
<?php
class Blog extends Controller {

    function Blog()
    {
        parent::Controller();

        $this->load->scaffolding('table_name');
    }
}
?>
```

Where **table_name** is the name of the table (table, not database) you wish to work with.

Once you've initialized scaffolding, you will access it with this URL prototype:

```
www.your-site.com/index.php/class/secret_word/
```

For example, using a controller named **Blog**, and **abracadabra** as the secret word, you would access scaffolding like this:

```
www.your-site.com/index.php/blog/abracadabra/
```

The scaffolding interface should be self-explanatory. You can add, edit or delete records.

A Final Note:

The scaffolding feature will only work with tables that contain a primary key, as this information is needed to perform the various database functions.

Previous Topic: [Auto-loading Resources](#) · [Top of Page](#) · [User Guide Home](#) · Next Topic: [URI Routing](#)

[CodeIgniter](#) · Copyright © 2007 · [Ellislab, Inc.](#)

Error Handling

CodeIgniter lets you build error reporting into your applications using the functions described below. In addition, it has an error logging class that permits error and debugging messages to be saved as text files.

Note: By default, CodeIgniter displays all PHP errors. You might wish to change this behavior once your development is complete. You'll find the **error_reporting()** function located at the top of your main index.php file. Disabling error reporting will NOT prevent log files from being written if there are errors.

Unlike most systems in CodeIgniter, the error functions are simple procedural interfaces that are available globally throughout the application. This approach permits error messages to get triggered without having to worry about class/function scoping.

The following functions let you generate errors:

show_error('message')

This function will display the error message supplied to it using the following error template:

application/errors/error_general.php

show_404('page')

This function will display the 404 error message supplied to it using the following error template:

application/errors/error_404.php

The function expects the string passed to it to be the file path to the page that isn't found. Note that CodeIgniter automatically shows 404 messages if controllers are not found.

log_message('level', 'message')

This function lets you write messages to your log files. You must supply one of three "levels" in the first parameter, indicating what type of message it is (debug, error, info), with the message itself in the second parameter. Example:

```
if ($some_var == "")
{
    log_message('error', 'Some variable did not contain a value.');
```

}

```
else
{
    log_message('debug', 'Some variable was correctly set');
```

}

```
log_message('info', 'The purpose of some variable is to provide some value.');
```

There are three message types:

1. Error Messages. These are actual errors, such as PHP errors or user errors.
2. Debug Messages. These are messages that assist in debugging. For example, if a class has been initialized, you could log this as debugging info.
3. Informational Messages. These are the lowest priority messages, simply giving information regarding some process. CodeIgniter doesn't natively generate any info messages but you may want to in your application.

Note: In order for the log file to actually be written, the "logs" folder must be writable. In addition, you must set the "threshold" for logging. You might, for example, only want error messages to be logged, and not the other two types. If you set it to zero logging will be disabled.

Views

A **view** is simply a web page, or a page fragment, like a header, footer, sidebar, etc. In fact, views can flexibly be embedded within other views (within other views, etc., etc.) if you need this type of hierarchy.

Views are never called directly, they must be loaded by a [controller](#). Remember that in an MVC framework, the Controller acts as the traffic cop, so it is responsible for fetching a particular view. If you have not read the [Controllers](#) page you should do so before continuing.

Using the example controller you created in the [controller](#) page, let's add a view to it.

Creating a View

Using your text editor, create a file called **blogview.php**, and put this in it:

Then save the file in your **application/views/** folder.

Loading a View

To load a particular view file you will use the following function:

```
$this->load->view('name');
```

Where **name** is the name of your view file. Note: The .php file extension does not need to be specified unless you use something other than **.php**.

Now, open the controller file you made earlier called **blog.php**, and replace the echo statement with the view loading function:

If you visit the your site using the URL you did earlier you should see your new view. The URL was similar to this:

```
www.your-site.com/index.php/blog/
```

Storing Views within Sub-folders

Your view files can also be stored within sub-folders if you prefer that type of organization. When doing so you will need to include the folder name loading the view. Example:

```
$this->load->view('folder_name/file_name');
```

Adding Dynamic Data to the View

Data is passed from the controller to the view by way of an **array** or an **object** in the second parameter of the view loading function. Here is an example using an array:

```
$data = array(  
    'title' => 'My Title',
```



```
'heading' => 'My Heading',  
'message' => 'My Message'  
);  
  
$this->load->view('blogview', $data);
```

And here's an example using an object:

```
$data = new Someclass();  
$this->load->view('blogview', $data);
```

Note: If you use an object, the class variables will be turned into array elements.

Let's try it with your controller file. Open it add this code:

Now open your view file and change the text to variables that correspond to the array keys in your data:

Then load the page at the URL you've been using and you should see the variables replaced.

Note: You'll notice that in the example above we are using PHP's alternative syntax. If you are not familiar with it you can read about it [here](#).

Creating Loops

The data array you pass to your view files is not limited to simple variables. You can pass multi dimensional arrays, which can be looped to generate multiple rows. For example, if you pull data from your database it will typically be in the form of a multi-dimensional array.

Here's a simple example. Add this to your controller:

Now open your view file and create a loop:

Previous Topic: [Controllers](#) · [Top of Page](#) · [User Guide Home](#) · Next Topic: [Models](#)

[CodeIgniter](#) · Copyright © 2007 · [Ellislab, Inc.](#)

Output Class

The Output class is a small class with one main function: To send the finalized web page to the requesting browser. It is also responsible for [caching](#) your web pages, if you use that feature.

Note: This class is initialized automatically by the system so there is no need to do it manually.

Under normal circumstances you won't even notice the Output class since it works transparently without your intervention. For example, when you use the [Loader](#) class to load a view file, it's automatically passed to the Output class, which will be called automatically by CodeIgniter at the end of system execution. It is possible, however, for you to manually intervene with the output if you need to, using either of the two following functions:

`$this->output->set_output();`

Permits you to manually set the final output string. Usage example:

```
$this->output->set_output($data);
```

Important: If you do set your output manually, it must be the last thing done in the function you call it from. For example, if you build a page in one of your controller functions, don't set the output until the end.

`$this->output->get_output();`

Permits you to manually retrieve any output that has been sent for storage in the output class. Usage example:

```
$string = $this->output->get_output();
```

Note that data will only be retrievable from this function if it has been previously sent to the output class by one of the CodeIgniter functions like **`$this->load->view()`**.

`$this->output->set_header();`

Permits you to manually set server headers, which the output class will send for you when outputting the final rendered display.

Example:

```
$this->output->set_header("HTTP/1.0 200 OK");
$this->output->set_header("HTTP/1.1 200 OK");
$this->output->set_header('Last-Modified: '.gmdate('D, d M Y H:i:s',
    $last_update).' GMT');
$this->output->set_header("Cache-Control: no-store, no-cache, must-
    revalidate");
$this->output->set_header("Cache-Control: post-check=0, pre-check=0",
    false);
$this->output->set_header("Pragma: no-cache");
```

`$this->output->enable_profiler();`

Permits you to enable/disable the [Profiler](#), which will display benchmark and other data at the bottom of your pages for debugging and optimization purposes.

To enable the profiler place the following function anywhere within your [Controller](#) functions:

```
$this->output->enable_profiler(TRUE);
```

When enabled a report will be generated and inserted at the bottom of your pages.

To disable the profiler you will use:

```
$this->output->enable_profiler(FALSE);
```

Previous Topic: [Language Class](#) · [Top of Page](#) · [User Guide Home](#) · Next Topic: [Pagination Class](#)

[CodeIgniter](#) · Copyright © 2007 · [Ellislab, Inc.](#)

CodeIgniter at a Glance

CodeIgniter is an Application Framework

CodeIgniter is a toolkit for people who build web application using PHP. Its goal is to enable you to develop projects much faster than you could if you were writing code from scratch, by providing a rich set of libraries for commonly needed tasks, as well as a simple interface and logical structure to access these libraries. CodeIgniter lets you creatively focus on your project by minimizing the amount of code needed for a given task.

CodeIgniter is Free

CodeIgniter is licensed under an Apache/BSD-style open source license so you can use it however you please. For more information please read the [license agreement](#).

CodeIgniter Runs on PHP 4

CodeIgniter is written to be compatible with PHP 4. Although we would have loved to take advantage of the better object handling in PHP 5 since it would have simplified some things we had to find creative solutions for (looking your way, multiple inheritance), at the time of this writing PHP 5 is not in widespread use, which means we would be alienating most of our potential audience. Major OS vendors like RedHat have yet to support PHP 5, and they are unlikely to do so until 2007, so we felt that it did not serve the best interests of the PHP community to write CodeIgniter in PHP 5.

Note: CodeIgniter will run on PHP 5. It simply does not take advantage of any native features that are only available in that version.

CodeIgniter is Light Weight

Truly light weight. The core system requires only a few very small

libraries. This is in stark contrast to many frameworks that require significantly more resources. Additional libraries are loaded dynamically upon request, based on your needs for a given process, so the base system is very lean and quite fast.

CodeIgniter is Fast

Really fast. We challenge you to find a framework that has better performance than CodeIgniter.

CodeIgniter Uses M-V-C

CodeIgniter uses the Model-View-Controller approach, which allows great separation between logic and presentation. This is particularly good for projects in which designers are working with your template files, as the code these file contain will be minimized. We describe MVC in more detail on its own page.

CodeIgniter Generates Clean URLs

The URLs generated by CodeIgniter are clean and search-engine friendly. Rather than using the standard "query string" approach to URLs that is synonymous with dynamic systems, CodeIgniter uses a segment-based approach:

```
www.your-site.com/news/article/345
```

Note: By default the index.php file is included in the URL but it can be removed using a simple .htaccess file.

CodeIgniter Packs a Punch

CodeIgniter comes with full-range of libraries that enable the most commonly needed web development tasks, like accessing a database, sending email, validating form data, maintaining sessions, manipulating images, working with XML-RPC data and much more.

CodeIgniter is Extensible

The system can be easily extended through the use of plugins and helper libraries, or through class extensions or system hooks.

CodeIgniter Does Not Require a Template Engine

Although CodeIgniter *does* come with a simple template parser that can be optionally used, it does not force you to use one. Template engines simply can not match the performance of native PHP, and the syntax that must be learned to use a template engine is usually only marginally easier than learning the basics of PHP. Consider this block of PHP code:

```
<ul>

<?php foreach ($addressbook as $name):?>

<li><?=$name?></li>

<?php endforeach; ?>

</ul>
```

Contrast this with the pseudo-code used by a template engine:

```
<ul>

{ foreach from=$addressbook item="name"}

<li>{ $name}</li>

{/foreach}

</ul>
```

Yes, the template engine example is a bit cleaner, but it comes at the price of performance, as the pseudo-code must be converted back into PHP to run. Since one of our goals is *maximum performance*, we opted to not require the use of a template engine.

CodeIgniter is Thoroughly Documented

Programmers love to code and hate to write documentation. We're no different, of course, but since documentation is **as important** as the code itself, we are committed to doing it. Our source code is extremely

clean and well commented as well.

CodeIgniter has a Friendly Community of Users

Our growing community of users can be seen actively participating in our [Community Forums](#).

Previous Topic: [Upgrading from an Older Version](#) · [Top of Page](#) · [User Guide Home](#) · Next Topic: [CodeIgniter Features](#)

[CodeIgniter](#) · Copyright © 2007 · [Ellislab, Inc.](#)

Models

Models are **optionally** available for those who want to use a more traditional MVC approach.

- [What is a Model?](#)
- [Anatomy of a Model](#)
- [Loading a Model](#)
- [Auto-Loading a Model](#)
- [Connecting to your Database](#)

What is a Model?

Models are PHP classes that are designed to work with information in your database. For example, let's say you use CodeIgniter to manage a blog. You might have a model class that contains functions to insert, update, and retrieve your blog data. Here is an example of what such a model class might look like:

```
class Blogmodel extends Model {  
  
    var $title   = "";  
    var $content = "";  
    var $date    = "";  
  
    function Blogmodel()  
    {  
        // Call the Model constructor  
        parent::Model();  
    }  
  
    function get_last_ten_entries()  
    {  
        $query = $this->db->get('entries', 10);  
        return $query->result();  
    }  
  
    function insert_entry()
```

```

{
    $this->title   = $_POST['title'];
    $this->content = $_POST['content'];
    $this->date    = time();

    $this->db->insert('entries', $this);
}

function update_entry()
{
    $this->title   = $_POST['title'];
    $this->content = $_POST['content'];
    $this->date    = time();

    $this->db->update('entries', $this, array('id', $_POST['id']));
}
}

```

Note: The functions in the above example use the [Active Record](#) database functions.

Anatomy of a Model

Model classes are stored in your **application/models/** folder. They can be nested within sub-folders if you want this type of organization.

The basic prototype for a model class is this:

```

class Model_name extends Model {

    function Model_name()
    {
        parent::Model();
    }
}

```

Where **Model_name** is the name of your class. Class names **must** be capitalized. Make sure your class extends the base Model class.

The file name will be a lower case version of your class name. For example, if your class is this:

```

class User_model extends Model {

```

```
function User_model()
{
    parent::Model();
}
}
```

Your file will be this:

```
application/models/user_model.php
```

Loading a Model

Your models will typically be loaded and called from within your **controller** functions. To load a model you will use the following function:

```
$this->load->model('Model_name');
```

If your model is located in a sub-folder, include the relative path from your models folder. For example, if you have a model located at **application/models/blog/queries.php** you'll load it using:

```
$this->load->model('blog/queries');
```

Once loaded, you will access your model functions using an object with the same name as your class:

```
$this->load->model('Model_name');

$this->Model_name->function();
```

If you would like your model assigned to a different object name you can specify it via the second parameter of the loading function:

```
$this->load->model('Model_name', 'fubar');

$this->fubar->function();
```

Here is an example of a controller, that loads a model, then serves a view:

```
class Blog_controller extends Controller {
    function blog()
    {
        $this->load->model('Blog');

        $data['query'] = $this->Blog->get_last_ten_entries();

        $this->load->view('blog', $data);
    }
}
```

Auto-loading Models

If you find that you need a particular model globally throughout your application, you can tell CodeIgniter to auto-load it during system initialization. This is done by opening the application/config/autoload.php file and adding the model to the autoload array.

Connecting to your Database

When a model is loaded it does **NOT** connect automatically to your database. The following options for connecting are available to you:

- You can connect using the standard database methods [described here](#), either from within your Controller class or your Model class.
- You can tell the model loading function to auto-connect by passing **TRUE** (boolean) via the third parameter, and connectivity settings, as defined in your database config file will be used:

```
$this->load->model('Model_name', '', TRUE);
```

- You can manually pass database connectivity settings via the third parameter:

```
$config['hostname'] = "localhost";
```

```
$config['username'] = "myusername";  
$config['password'] = "mypassword";  
$config['database'] = "mydatabase";  
$config['dbdriver'] = "mysql";  
$config['dbprefix'] = "";  
$config['pconnect'] = FALSE;  
$config['db_debug'] = TRUE;  
$config['active_r'] = TRUE;  
  
$this->load->model('Model_name', "", $config);
```

Previous Topic: [Views](#) · [Top of Page](#) · [User Guide Home](#) · Next Topic: [Helpers](#)

[CodeIgniter](#) · Copyright © 2007 · [Ellislab, Inc.](#)

CodeIgniter Features

Features in and of themselves are a very poor way to judge an application since they tell you nothing about the user experience, or how intuitively or intelligently it is designed. Features don't reveal anything about the quality of the code, or the performance, or the attention to detail, or security practices. The only way to really judge an app is to try it and get to know the code. [Installing](#) CodeIgniter is child's play so we encourage you to do just that. In the mean time here's a list of CodeIgniter's main features.

- Model-View-Controller Based System
- PHP 4 Compatible
- Extremely Light Weight
- Full Featured database classes with support for several platforms.
- Active Record Database Support
- Form and Data Validation
- Security and XSS Filtering
- Session Management
- Email Sending Class. Supports Attachments, HTML/Text email, multiple protocols (sendmail, SMTP, and Mail) and more.
- Image Manipulation Library (cropping, resizing, rotating, etc.). Supports GD, ImageMagick, and NetPBM
- File Uploading Class
- FTP Class
- Localization
- Pagination
- Data Encryption
- Benchmarking
- Full Page Caching
- Error Logging
- Application Profiling

- Scaffolding
- Calendaring Class
- User Agent Class
- Zip Encoding Class
- Template Engine Class
- Trackback Class
- XML-RPC Library
- Unit Testing Class
- Search-engine Friendly URLs
- Flexible URI Routing
- Support for Hooks, Class Extensions, and Plugins
- Large library of "helper" functions

Previous Topic: [CodeIgniter At a Glance](#) · [Top of Page](#) · [User Guide Home](#) · Next Topic: [Application Flow Chart](#)

[CodeIgniter](#) · Copyright © 2007 · [Ellislab, Inc.](#)

Template Parser Class

The Template Parser Class enables you to parse pseudo-variables contained within your view files. It can parse simple variables or variable tag pairs. If you've never used a template engine, pseudo-variables look like this:

```
<html>
<head>
<title>{blog_title}</title>
</head>
<body>

<h3>{blog_heading}</h3>

{blog_entries}
<h5>{title}</h5>
<p>{body}</p>
{/blog_entries}
</body>
</html>
```

These variables are not actual PHP variables, but rather plain text representations that allow you to eliminate PHP from your templates (view files).

Note: CodeIgniter does **not** require you to use this class since using pure PHP in your view pages lets them run a little faster. However, some developers prefer to use a template engine if they work with designers who they feel would find some confusion working with PHP.

Also Note: The Template Parser Class is **not** not a full-blown template parsing solution. We've kept it very lean on purpose in order to maintain maximum performance.

Initializing the Class

Like most other classes in CodeIgniter, the Parser class is initialized in your controller using the **`$this->load->library`** function:

```
$this->load->library('parser');
```

Once loaded, the Parser library object will be available using: **`$this->parser`**

The following functions are available in this library:

`$this->parser->parse()`

This variable accepts a template name and data array as input, and it generates a parsed version. Example:

```
$this->load->library('parser');

$data = array(
    'blog_title' => 'My Blog Title',
    'blog_heading' => 'My Blog Heading'
);

$this->parser->parse('blog_template', $data);
```

The first parameter contains the name of the [view file](#) (in this example the file would be called `blog_template.php`), and the second parameter contains an associative array of data to be replaced in the template. In the above example, the template would contain two variables: `{blog_title}` and `{blog_heading}`

There is no need to "echo" or do something with the data returned by **`$this->parser->parse()`**. It is automatically passed to the output class to be sent to the browser. However, if you do want the data returned instead of sent to the output class you can pass `TRUE` (boolean) to the third parameter:

```
$string = $this->parser->parse('blog_template', $data, TRUE);
```

Variable Pairs

The above example code allows simple variables to be replaced. What if you would like an entire block of variables to be repeated, with each iteration containing new values? Consider the template example we showed at the top of the page:

```

<html>
<head>
<title>{blog_title}</title>
</head>
<body>

<h3>{blog_heading}</h3>

{blog_entries}
<h5>{title}</h5>
<p>{body}</p>
{/blog_entries}
</body>
</html>

```

In the above code you'll notice a pair of variables: **{blog_entries}** data... **{/blog_entries}**. In a case like this, the entire chunk of data between these pairs would be repeated multiple times, corresponding to the number of rows in a result.

Parsing variable pairs is done using the identical code shown above to parse single variables, except, you will add a multi-dimensional array corresponding to your variable pair data. Consider this example:

```

$this->load->library('parser');

$data = array(
    'blog_title' => 'My Blog Title',
    'blog_heading' => 'My Blog Heading',
    'blog_entries' => array(
        array('title' => 'Title 1', 'body' => 'Body 1'),
        array('title' => 'Title 2', 'body' => 'Body 2'),
        array('title' => 'Title 3', 'body' => 'Body 3'),
        array('title' => 'Title 4', 'body' => 'Body 4'),
        array('title' => 'Title 5', 'body' => 'Body 5')
    )
);

$this->parser->parse('blog_template', $data);

```

If your "pair" data is coming from a database result, which is already a multi-dimensional array, you can simply use the database result function:

```

$query = $this->db->query("SELECT * FROM blog");

$this->load->library('parser');

```

```
$data = array(
    'blog_title'    => 'My Blog Title',
    'blog_heading' => 'My Blog Heading',
    'blog_entries' => $query->result_array()
);

$this->parser->parse('blog_template', $data);
```

Previous Topic: [Trackback Class](#) · [Top of Page](#) · [User Guide Home](#) · Next Topic: [Unit Testing Class](#)

[CodeIgniter](#) · Copyright © 2007 · [Ellislab, Inc.](#)

Form Validation

Before explaining CodeIgniter's approach to data validation, let's describe the ideal scenario:

1. A form is displayed.
2. You fill it in and submit it.
3. If you submitted something invalid, or perhaps missed a required item, the form is redisplayed containing your data along with an error message describing the problem.
4. This process continues until you have submitted a valid form.

On the receiving end, the script must:

1. Check for required data.
2. Verify that the data is of the correct type, and meets the correct criteria. (For example, if a username is submitted it must be validated to contain only permitted characters. It must be of a minimum length, and not exceed a maximum length. The username can't be someone else's existing username, or perhaps even a reserved word. Etc.)
3. Sanitize the data for security.
4. Pre-format the data if needed (Does the data need to be trimmed? HTML encoded? Etc.)
5. Prep the data for insertion in the database.

Although there is nothing complex about the above process, it usually requires a significant amount of code, and to display error messages, various control structures are usually placed within the form HTML. Form validation, while simple to create, is generally very messy and tedious to implement.

CodeIgniter provides a comprehensive validation framework that truly minimizes the amount of code you'll write. It also removes all control structures from your form HTML, permitting

it to be clean and free of code.

Overview

In order to implement CodeIgniter's form validation you'll need three things:

1. A [View](#) file containing the form.
2. A View file containing a "success" message to be displayed upon successful submission.
3. A [controller](#) function to receive and process the submitted data.

Let's create those three things, using a member sign-up form as the example.

The Form

Using a text editor, create a form called **myform.php**. In it, place this code and save it to your **applications/views/** folder:

The Success Page

Using a text editor, create a form called **formsuccess.php**. In it, place this code and save it to your **applications/views/** folder:

The Controller

Using a text editor, create a controller called **form.php**. In it, place this code and save it to your **applications/controllers/** folder:

Try it!

To try your form, visit your site using a URL similar to this one:

```
www.your-site.com/index.php/form/
```

If you submit the form you should simply see the form reload. That's because you haven't set up any validation rules yet, which we'll get to in a moment.

Explanation

You'll notice several things about the above pages:

The **form** (myform.php) is a standard web form with a couple exceptions:

1. It uses a **form helper** to create the form opening. Technically, this isn't necessary. You could create the form using standard HTML. However, the benefit of using the helper is that it generates the action URL for you, based on the URL in your config file. This makes your application more portable and flexible in the event your URLs change.
2. At the top of the form you'll notice the following variable:

```
<?=$this->validation->error_string; ?>
```

This variable will display any error messages sent back by the validator. If there are no messages it returns nothing.

The **controller** (form.php) has one function: **index()**. This function initializes the validation class and loads the **form helper** and **URL helper** used by your view files. It also **runs** the validation routine. Based on whether the validation was successful it either presents the form or the success page.

Since you haven't told the validation class to validate anything yet, it returns "false" (boolean false) by default. The **run() function only returns "true" if it has successfully applied your rules without any of them failing.**

Setting Validation Rules

CodeIgniter lets you set as many validation rules as you need for a given field, cascading them in order, and it even lets you prep and pre-process the field data at the same time. Let's see it in action, we'll explain it afterwards.

In your **controller** (form.php), add this code just below the validation initialization function:

```
$rules['username'] = "required";  
$rules['password'] = "required";  
$rules['passconf'] = "required";  
$rules['email'] = "required";  
  
$this->validation->set_rules($rules);
```

Your controller should now look like this:

Now submit the form with the fields blank and you should see the error message. If you submit the form with all the fields populated you'll see your success page.

Note: The form fields are not yet being re-populated with the data when there is an error. We'll get to that shortly, once we're through explaining the validation rules.

Changing the Error Delimiters

By default, the system adds a paragraph tag (<p>) around each error message shown. You can easily change these delimiters with this code, placed in your controller:

```
$this->validation->set_error_delimiters('<div class="error">', '</div>');
```

In this example, we've switched to using div tags.

Cascading Rules

CodeIgniter lets you pipe multiple rules together. Let's try it. Change your rules array like this:

```
$rules['username'] = "required|min_length[5]|max_length[12]";  
$rules['password'] = "required|matches[passconf]";  
$rules['passconf'] = "required";  
$rules['email'] = "required|valid_email";
```

The above code requires that:

1. The username field be no shorter than 5 characters and no longer than 12.
2. The password field must match the password confirmation field.
3. The email field must contain a valid email address.

Give it a try!

Note: There are numerous rules available which you can read about in the validation reference.

Prepping Data

In addition to the validation functions like the ones we used above, you can also prep your data in various ways. For example, you can set up rules like this:

```
$rules['username'] = "trim|required|min_length[5]|max_length[12]|  
xss_clean";  
$rules['password'] = "trim|required|matches[passconf]|md5";  
$rules['passconf'] = "trim|required";  
$rules['email'] = "trim|required|valid_email";
```

In the above, we are "trimming" the fields, converting the password to MD5, and running the username through the "xss_clean"

function, which removes malicious data.

Any native PHP function that accepts one parameter can be used as a rule, like `htmlspecialchars`, `trim`, `MD5`, etc.

Note: You will generally want to use the prepping functions **after** the validation rules so if there is an error, the original data will be shown in the form.

Callbacks: Your own Validation Functions

The validation system supports callbacks to your own validation functions. This permits you to extend the validation class to meet your needs. For example, if you need to run a database query to see if the user is choosing a unique username, you can create a callback function that does that. Let's create a simple example.

In your controller, change the "username" rule to this:

```
$rules['username'] = "callback_username_check";
```

Then add a new function called **username_check** to your controller. Here's how your controller should look:

Reload your form and submit it with the word "test" as the username. You can see that the form field data was passed to your callback function for you to process.

To invoke a callback just put the function name in a rule, with "callback_" as the rule prefix.

The error message was set using the **\$this->validation-**

>**set_message** function. Just remember that the message key (the first parameter) must match your function name.

Note: You can apply your own custom error messages to any rule, just by setting the message similarly. For example, to change the message for the "required" rule you will do this:

```
$this->validation->set_message('required', 'Your custom message here');
```

Re-populating the form

Thus far we have only been dealing with errors. It's time to repopulate the form field with the submitted data. This is done similarly to your rules. Add the following code to your controller, just below your rules:

```
$fields['username'] = 'Username';  
$fields['password'] = 'Password';  
$fields['passconf'] = 'Password Confirmation';  
$fields['email'] = 'Email Address';  
  
$this->validation->set_fields($fields);
```

The array keys are the actual names of the form fields, the value represents the full name that you want shown in the error message.

The index function of your controller should now look like this:

Now open your **myform.php** view file and update the value in each field so that it has an object corresponding to its name:

Now reload your page and submit the form so that it triggers an error. Your form fields should be populated and the error messages will contain a more relevant field name.

Showing Errors Individually

If you prefer to show an error message next to each form field, rather than as a list, you can change your form so that it looks like this:

If there are no errors, nothing will be shown. If there is an error, the message will appear, wrapped in the delimiters you have set (<p> tags by default).

Note: To display errors this way you must remember to set your fields using the **`$this->validation->set_fields`** function described earlier. The errors will be turned into variables that have "_error" after your field name. For example, your "username" error will be available at:

`$this->validation->username_error`.

Rule Reference

The following is a list of all the native rules that are available to use:

Rule	Parameter	Description	Example
required	No	Returns FALSE if the form element is empty.	
matches	Yes	Returns FALSE if the form element does not match the one in the parameter.	matches[form_item]
min_length	Yes	Returns FALSE if the form element is shorter than the parameter value.	min_length[6]

max_length	Yes	Returns FALSE if the form element is longer then the parameter value.	max_length[12]
exact_length	Yes	Returns FALSE if the form element is not exactly the parameter value.	exact_length[8]
alpha	No	Returns FALSE if the form element contains anything other than alphabetical characters.	
alpha_numeric	No	Returns FALSE if the form element contains anything other than alpha-numeric characters.	
alpha_dash	No	Returns FALSE if the form element contains anything other than alpha-numeric characters, underscores or dashes.	
numeric	No	Returns FALSE if the form element contains anything other than numeric characters.	
valid_email	No	Returns FALSE if the form element does not contain a valid email address.	
valid_ip	No	Returns FALSE if the supplied IP is not valid.	

Note: These rules can also be called as discreet functions. For example:

```
$this->validation->required($string);
```

Note: You can also use any native PHP functions that permit one parameter.

Prepping Reference

The following is a list of all the prepping functions that are available to use:

Name	Parameter	Description

xss_clean	No	Runs the data through the XSS filtering function, described in the Input Class page.
prep_for_form	No	Converts special characters so that HTML data can be shown in a form field without breaking it.
prep_url	No	Adds "http://" to URLs if missing.
strip_image_tags	No	Strips the HTML from image tags leaving the raw URL.
encode_php_tags	No	Converts PHP tags to entities.

Note: You can also use any native PHP functions that permit one parameter, like **trim**, **htmlspecialchars**, **urldecode**, etc.

Setting Custom Error Messages

All of the native error messages are located in the following language file: **language/english/validation_lang.php**

To set your own custom message you can either edit that file, or use the following function:

```
$this->validation->set_message('rule', 'Error Message');
```

Where **rule** corresponds to the name of a particular rule, and **Error Message** is the text you would like displayed.

Dealing with Select Menus, Radio Buttons, and Checkboxes

If you use select menus, radio buttons or checkboxes, you will want the state of these items to be retained in the event of an error. The Validation class has three functions that help you do this:

set_select()

Permits you to display the menu item that was selected. The first parameter must contain the name of the select menu, the second parameter must contain the value of each item. Example:

```
<select name="myselect">
<option value="one" <?= $this->validation->set_select('myselect',
```

```
'one'); ?> >One</option>
<option value="two" <?= $this->validation->set_select('myselect',
'two'); ?> >Three</option>
<option value="three" <?= $this->validation->set_select('myselect',
'three'); ?> >Three</option>
</select>
```

set_checkbox()

Permits you to display a checkbox in the state it was submitted. The first parameter must contain the name of the checkbox, the second parameter must contain its value. Example:

```
<input type="checkbox" name="mycheck" value="1" <?= $this->validation-
>set_checkbox('mycheck', '1'); ?> />
```

set_radio()

Permits you to display radio buttons in the state they were submitted. The first parameter must contain the name of the radio button, the second parameter must contain its value. Example:

```
<input type="radio" name="myradio" value="1" <?= $this->validation-
>set_radio('myradio', '1'); ?> />
```

Previous Topic: [User Agent Class](#) · [Top of Page](#) · [User Guide Home](#) · Next Topic: [XML-RPC Class](#)

CodeIgniter · Copyright © 2007 · Ellislab, Inc.

Web Page Caching

CodeIgniter lets you cache your pages in order to achieve maximum performance.

Although CodeIgniter is quite fast, the amount of dynamic information you display in your pages will correlate directly to the server resources, memory, and processing cycles utilized, which affect your page load speeds. By caching your pages, since they are saved in their fully rendered state, you can achieve performance that nears that of static web pages.

How Does Caching Work?

Caching can be enabled on a per-page basis, and you can set the length of time that a page should remain cached before being refreshed. When a page is loaded for the first time, the cache file will be written to your **system/cache** folder. On subsequent page loads the cache file will be retrieved and sent to the requesting user's browser. If it has expired, it will be deleted and refreshed before being sent to the browser.

Note: The Benchmark tag is not cached so you can still view your page load speed when caching is enabled.

Enabling Caching

To enable caching, put the following tag in any of your controller functions:

```
$this->output->cache(n);
```

Where **n** is the number of **minutes** you wish the page to remain cached between refreshes.

The above tag can go anywhere within a function. It is not affected

by the order that it appears, so place it wherever it seems most logical to you. Once the tag is in place, your pages will begin being cached.

Warning: Because of the way CodeIgniter stores content for output, caching will only work if you are generating display for your controller with a [view](#).

Note: Before the cache files can be written you must set the file permissions on your **system/cache** folder such that it is writable.

Deleting Caches

If you no longer wish to cache a file you can remove the caching tag and it will no longer be refreshed when it expires. Note: Removing the tag will not delete the cache immediately. It will have to expire normally. If you need to remove it earlier you will need to manually delete it from your cache folder.

Previous Topic: [Error Handling](#) · [Top of Page](#) · [User Guide Home](#) · Next Topic: [Profiling Your Application](#)

[CodeIgniter](#) · Copyright © 2007 · [Ellislab, Inc.](#)

Text Helper

The Text Helper file contains functions that assist in working with text.

Loading this Helper

This helper is loaded using the following code:

```
$this->load->helper('text');
```

The following functions are available:

word_limiter()

Truncates a string to the number of **words** specified. Example:

```
$string = "Here is a nice text string consisting of eleven words.";
$string = word_limiter($string, 4);
// Returns: Here is a nice...
```

The third parameter is an optional suffix added to the string. By default it add an ellipsis.

character_limiter()

Truncates a string to the number of **characters** specified. It maintains the integrity of words so the character count may be slightly more or less then what you specify. Example:

```
$string = "Here is a nice text string consisting of eleven words.";
```



```
$string = character_limiter($string, 20);  
  
// Returns: Here is a nice text string...
```

The third parameter is an optional suffix added to the string. By default it add an ellipsis.

ascii_to_entities()

Converts ASCII values to character entities, including high ASCII and MS Word characters that can cause problems when used in a web page, so that they can be shown consistently regardless of browser settings or stored reliably in a database. There is some dependence on your server's supported character sets, so it may not be 100% reliable in all cases, but for the most part it should correctly identify characters outside the normal range (like accented characters). Example:

```
$string = ascii_to_entities($string);
```

entities_to_ascii()

This function does the opposite of the previous one; it turns character entities back into ASCII.

word_censor()

Enables you to censor words within a text string. The first parameter will contain the original string. The second will contain an array of words which you disallow. The third (optional) parameter can contain a replacement value for the words. If not specified they are replaced with pound signs: #####. Example:

```
$disallowed = array('darn', 'shucks', 'golly', 'phooey');  
  
$string = word_censor($string, $disallowed, 'Beep!');
```

highlight_code()

Colorizes a string of code (PHP, HTML, etc.). Example:

```
$string = highlight_code($string);
```

The function uses PHP's `highlight_string()` function, so the colors used are the ones specified in your `php.ini` file.

highlight_phrase()

Will highlight a phrase within a text string. The first parameter will contain the original string, the second will contain the phrase you wish to highlight. The third and fourth parameters will contain the opening/closing HTML tags you would like the phrase wrapped in. Example:

```
$string = "Here is a nice text string about nothing in particular.";

$string = highlight_phrase($string, "nice text", '<span style="color:
#990000">', '</span>');
```

The above text returns:

Here is a **nice text** string about nothing in particular.

word_wrap()

Wraps text at the specified **character** count while maintaining complete words. Example:

```
$string = "Here is a simple string of text that will help us demonstrate this
function.";

echo word_wrap($string, 25);

// Would produce:

Here is a simple string
of text that will help
us demonstrate this
function
```

Previous Topic: [String Helper](#) · [Top of Page](#) · [User Guide Home](#) · Next Topic: [Typography Helper](#)

[CodeIgniter](#) · Copyright © 2007 · [Ellislab, Inc.](#)

The Database Class

CodeIgniter comes with a full-featured and very fast abstracted database class that supports both traditional structures and Active Record patterns. The database functions offer clear, simple syntax.

- [Quick Start: Usage Examples](#)
- [Database Configuration](#)
- [Connecting to a Database](#)
- [Running Queries](#)
- [Generating Query Results](#)
- [Query Helper Functions](#)
- [Active Record Class](#)
- [Transactions](#)
- [Table MetaData](#)
- [Field MetaData](#)
- [Custom Function Calls](#)
- [Query Caching](#)
- [Database Utilities Class](#)

[Previous Topic: Config Class](#) · [Top of Page](#) · [User Guide Home](#) · [Next Topic: Quick Start: Usage Examples](#)

[CodeIgniter](#) · Copyright © 2007 · [Ellislab, Inc.](#)

Auto-loading Resources

CodeIgniter comes with an "Auto-load" feature that permits libraries, helpers, and plugins to be initialized automatically every time the system runs. If you need certain resources globally throughout your application you should consider auto-loading them for convenience.

The following items can be loaded automatically:

- Core classes found in the "libraries" folder
- Helper files found in the "helpers" folder
- Plugins found in the "plugins" folder
- Custom config files found in the "config" folder
- Language files found in the "system/language" folder
- Models found in the "models" folder

To autoload resources, open the **application/config/autoload.php** file and add the item you want loaded to the **autoload** array. You'll find instructions in that file corresponding to each type of item.

Note: Do not include the file extension (.php) when adding items to the autoload array.

Previous Topic: [Hooks - Extending the Core](#) · [Top of Page](#) · [User Guide Home](#) · Next Topic: [Scaffolding](#)

CodeIgniter · Copyright © 2007 · Ellislab, Inc.

Alternate PHP Syntax for View Files

If you do not utilize CodeIgniter's [template engine](#), you'll be using pure PHP in your View files. To minimize the PHP code in these files, and to make it easier to identify the code blocks it is recommended that you use PHP's alternative syntax for control structures and short tag echo statements. If you are not familiar with this syntax, it allows you to eliminate the braces from your code, and eliminate "echo" statements.

Automatic Short Tag Support

Note: If you find that the syntax described in this page does not work on your server it might be that "short tags" are disabled in your PHP ini file. CodeIgniter will optionally rewrite short tags on-the-fly, allowing you to use that syntax even if your server doesn't support it. This feature can be enabled in your [config/config.php](#) file.

Please note that if you do use this feature, if PHP errors are encountered in your **view files**, the error message and line number will not be accurately shown. Instead, all errors will be shown as **eval()** errors.

Alternative Echos

Normally to echo, or print out a variable you would do this:

```
<?php echo $variable; ?>
```

With the alternative syntax you can instead do it this way:

```
<?=$variable?>
```

Alternative Control Structures

Controls structures, like **if**, **for**, **foreach**, and **while** can be written in a simplified format as well. Here is an example using foreach:

```
<ul>

<?php foreach($todo as $item): ?>

<li><?=$item?> </li>

<?php endforeach; ?>

</ul>
```

Notice that there are no braces. Instead, the end brace is replaced with **endforeach**. Each of the control structures listed above has a similar closing syntax: **endif**, **endfor**, **endforeach**, and **endwhile**

Also notice that instead of using a semicolon after each structure (except the last one), there is a colon. This is important!

Here is another example, using if/elseif/else. Notice the colons:

```
<?php if ($username == 'sally'): ?>

    <h3>Hi Sally</h3>

<?php elseif ($username == 'joe'): ?>

    <h3>Hi Joe</h3>

<?php else: ?>

    <h3>Hi unknown user</h3>

<?php endif; ?>
```

Previous Topic: [Managing Applications](#) · [Top of Page](#) · [User Guide Home](#) · Next Topic: [Security](#)

[CodeIgniter](#) · Copyright © 2007 · [Ellislab, Inc.](#)

Loader Class

Loader, as the name suggests, is used to load elements. These elements can be libraries (classes) [View files](#), [Helpers](#), [Plugins](#), or your own files.

Note: This class is initialized automatically by the system so there is no need to do it manually.

The following functions are available in this class:

`$this->load->library('class_name')`

This function is used to load core classes. Where **class_name** is the name of the class you want to load. Note: We use the terms "class" and "library" interchangeably.

For example, if you would like to send email with CodeIgniter, the first step is to load the email class within your controller:

```
$this->load->library('email');
```

Once loaded, the library will be ready for use, using **`$this->email->some_function()`**. Each library is described in detail in its own page, so please read the information regarding each one you would like to use.

Parameters can be passed to the library via an array in the second parameter.

`$this->load->view('file_name', $data, true/false)`

This function is used to load your View files. If you haven't read the [Views](#) section of the user guide it is recommended that you do since it shows you how this function is typically used.

The first parameter is required. It is the name of the view file you would like to load. Note: The .php file extension does not need to be specified unless you use something other than **.php**.

The second **optional** parameter can take an associative array or an object as input, which it runs through the PHP [extract](#) function to convert to variables that can be used in your view files. Again, read the [Views](#) page to learn how this might be useful.

The third **optional** parameter lets you change the behavior of the function so that it returns data as a string rather than sending it to your browser. This can be useful if you want to process the data in some way. If you set the parameter to **true** (boolean) it will return data. The default behavior is **false**, which sends it to your browser. Remember to assign it to a variable if you want the data returned:

```
$string = $this->load->view('myfile', '', true);
```

`$this->load->database('options', true/false)`

This function lets you load the database class. The two parameters are **optional**. Please see the [database](#) section for more info.

`$this->load->scaffolding('table_name')`

This function lets you enable scaffolding. Please see the [scaffolding](#) section for more info.

`$this->load->vars($array)`

This function takes an associative array as input and generates variables using the PHP [extract](#) function. This function produces the same result as using the second parameter of the **`$this->load->view()`** function above. The reason you might want to use this function independently is if you would like to set some global variables in the constructor of your controller and have them become available in any view file loaded from any function. You can have multiple calls to this function. The data get cached and merged into one array for conversion to variables.

`$this->load->helper('file_name')`

This function loads helper files, where **file_name** is the name of the file, without the **_helper.php** extension.

`$this->load->plugin('file_name')`

This function loads plugins files, where **file_name** is the name of the file, without the **_plugin.php** extension.

`$this->load->file('filepath/filename', true/false)`

This is a generic file loading function. Supply the filepath and name in the first parameter and it will open and read the file. By default the data is sent to your browser, just like a View file, but if you set the second parameter to **true** (boolean) it will instead return the data as a string.

`$this->load->lang('file_name')`

This function is an alias of the [language loading function](#): `$this->lang->load()`

`$this->load->config('file_name')`

This function is an alias of the [config file loading function](#): `$this->config->load()`

Previous Topic: [Input Class](#) · [Top of Page](#) · [User Guide Home](#) · Next Topic: [Language Class](#)

[CodeIgniter](#) · Copyright © 2007 · [Ellislab, Inc.](#)

Profiling Your Application

The Profiler Class will display benchmark results, queries you have run, and \$_POST data at the bottom of your pages. This information can be useful during development in order to help with debugging and optimization.

Initializing the Class

Important: This class does **NOT** need to be initialized. It is loaded automatically by the [Output Class](#) if profiling is enabled as shown below.

Enabling the Profiler

To enable the profiler place the following function anywhere within your [Controller](#) functions:

```
$this->output->enable_profiler(TRUE);
```

When enabled a report will be generated and inserted at the bottom of your pages.

To disable the profiler you will use:

```
$this->output->enable_profiler(FALSE);
```

Setting Benchmark Points

In order for the Profiler to compile and display your benchmark data you must name your mark points using specific syntax. Please read the information on setting Benchmark points in [Benchmark Class](#) page.

Previous Topic: [Caching](#) · [Top of Page](#) · [User Guide Home](#) · Next Topic: [Managing Applications](#)

[CodeIgniter](#) · Copyright © 2007 · [Ellislab, Inc.](#)

Language Class

The Language Class provides functions to retrieve language files and lines of text for purposes of internationalization.

In your CodeIgniter system folder you'll find one called **language** containing sets of language files. You can create your own language files as needed in order to display error and other messages in other languages.

Language files are typically stored in your **system/language** directory. Alternately you can create a folder called **language** inside your **application** folder and store them there. CodeIgniter will look first in your **system/application/language** directory. If the directory does not exist or the specified language is not located there CI will instead look in your global **system/language** folder.

Note: Each language should be stored in its own folder. For example, the English files are located at: **system/language/english**

Creating Language Files

Language files must be named with **_lang.php** as the file extension. For example, let's say you want to create a file containing error messages. You might name it: **error_lang.php**

Within the file you will assign each line of text to an array called **\$lang** with this prototype:

```
$lang['language_key'] = "The actual message to be shown";
```

Note: It's a good practice to use a common prefix for all messages in a given file to avoid collisions with similarly named items in other files. For example, if you are creating error messages you might prefix them with **error_**

```
$lang['error_email_missing'] = "You must submit an email address";  
$lang['error_url_missing'] = "You must submit a URL";  
$lang['error_username_missing'] = "You must submit a username";
```

Loading A Language File

In order to fetch a line from a particular file you must load the file first. Loading a language file is done with the following code:

```
$this->lang->load('filename', 'language');
```

Where **filename** is the name of the file you wish to load (without the file extension), and **language** is the language set containing it (ie, english). If the second parameter is missing, the default language set in your **application/config/config.php** file will be used.

Fetching a Line of Text

Once your desired language file is loaded you can access any line of text using this function:

```
$this->lang->line('language_key');
```

Where **language_key** is the array key corresponding to the line you wish to show.

Note: This function simply returns the line. It does not echo it for you.

Auto-loading Languages

If you find that you need a particular language globally throughout your application, you can tell CodeIgniter to **auto-load** it during system initialization. This is done by opening the application/config/autoload.php file and adding the language(s) to the autoload array.

Previous Topic: [Loader Class](#) · [Top of Page](#) · [User Guide Home](#) · Next Topic: [Output Class](#)

[CodeIgniter](#) · Copyright © 2007 · [Ellislab, Inc.](#)

Pagination Class

CodeIgniter's Pagination class is very easy to use, and it is 100% customizable, either dynamically or via stored preferences.

If you are not familiar with the term "pagination", it refers to links that allows you to navigate from page to page, like this:

```
« First < 1 2 3 4 5 > Last »
```

Example

Here is a simple example showing how to create pagination in one of your [controller](#) functions:

```
$this->load->library('pagination');

$config['base_url'] = 'http://www.your-site.com/index.php/test/page/';
$config['total_rows'] = '200';
$config['per_page'] = '20';

$this->pagination->initialize($config);

echo $this->pagination->create_links();
```

Notes:

The **\$config** array contains your configuration variables. It is passed to the **\$this->pagination->initialize** function as shown above. Although there are some twenty items you can configure, at minimum you need the three shown. Here is a description of what those items represent:

- **base_url** This is the full URL to the controller class/function containing your pagination. In the example above, it is pointing to a controller called "Test" and a function called "page". Keep in mind that you can [re-route your URI](#) if you need a different structure.

- **total_rows** This number represents the total rows in the result set you are creating pagination for. Typically this number will be the total rows that your database query returned.
- **per_page** The number of items you intend to show per page. In the above example, you would be showing 20 items per page.

The **create_links()** function returns an empty string when there is no pagination to show.

Setting preferences in a config file

If you prefer not to set preferences using the above method, you can instead put them into a config file. Simply create a new file called the **pagination.php**, add the **\$config** array in that file. Then save the file in: **config/pagination.php** and it will be used automatically. You will NOT need to use the **\$this->pagination->initialize** function if you save your preferences in a config file.

Customizing the Pagination

The following is a list of all the preferences you can pass to the initialization function to tailor the display.

\$config['uri_segment'] = 3;

The pagination function automatically determines which segment of your URI contains the page number. If you need something different you can specify it.

\$config['num_links'] = 2;

The number of "digit" links you would like before and after the selected page number. For example, the number 2 will place two digits on either side, as in the example links at the very top of this page.

Adding Enclosing Markup

If you would like to surround the entire pagination with some markup you can do it with these two prefs:

```
$config['full_tag_open'] = '<p>';
```

The opening tag placed on the left side of the entire result.

```
$config['full_tag_close'] = '</p>';
```

The closing tag placed on the right side of the entire result.

Customizing the First Link

```
$config['first_link'] = 'First';
```

The text you would like shown in the "first" link on the left.

```
$config['first_tag_open'] = '<div>';
```

The opening tag for the "first" link.

```
$config['first_tag_close'] = '</div>';
```

The closing tag for the "first" link.

Customizing the Last Link

```
$config['last_link'] = 'Last';
```

The text you would like shown in the "last" link on the right.

```
$config['last_tag_open'] = '<div>';
```

The opening tag for the "last" link.

```
$config['last_tag_close'] = '</div>';
```

The closing tag for the "last" link.

Customizing the "Next" Link

```
$config['next_link'] = '&gt;';
```

The text you would like shown in the "next" page link.

```
$config['next_tag_open'] = '<div>';
```

The opening tag for the "next" link.

```
$config['next_tag_close'] = '</div>';
```

The closing tag for the "next" link.

Customizing the "Previous" Link

```
$config['prev_link'] = '&lt;';
```

The text you would like shown in the "previous" page link.

```
$config['prev_tag_open'] = '<div>';
```

The opening tag for the "previous" link.

```
$config['prev_tag_close'] = '</div>';
```

The closing tag for the "previous" link.

Customizing the "Current Page" Link

```
$config['cur_tag_open'] = '<b>';
```

The opening tag for the "current" link.

```
$config['cur_tag_close'] = '</b>';
```

The closing tag for the "current" link.

Customizing the "Digit" Link

```
$config['num_tag_open'] = '<div>';
```

The opening tag for the "digit" link.

```
$config['num_tag_close'] = '</div>';
```

The closing tag for the "digit" link.

Previous Topic: [Output Class](#) · [Top of Page](#) · [User Guide Home](#) · Next Topic: [Session Class](#)

[CodeIgniter](#) · Copyright © 2007 · [Ellislab, Inc.](#)

CodeIgniter License Agreement

Copyright (c) 2006, EllisLab, Inc.
All rights reserved.

This license is a legal agreement between you and EllisLab Inc. for the use of CodeIgniter Software (the "Software"). By obtaining the Software you agree to comply with the terms and conditions of this license.

Permitted Use

You are permitted to use, copy, modify, and distribute the Software and its documentation, with or without modification, for any purpose, provided that the following conditions are met:

1. A copy of this license agreement must be included with the distribution.
2. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice in all source code files.
3. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
4. Any files that have been modified must carry notices stating the nature of the change and the names of those who changed them.
5. Products derived from the Software must include an acknowledgment that they are derived from CodeIgniter in their documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
6. Products derived from the Software may not be called "CodeIgniter", nor may "CodeIgniter" appear in their name, without prior written permission from EllisLab, Inc.

Indemnity

You agree to indemnify and hold harmless the authors of the Software and any contributors for any direct, indirect, incidental, or consequential third-party claims, actions or suits, as well as any related expenses, liabilities, damages, settlements or fees arising from your use or misuse of the Software, or a violation of any terms of this license.

Disclaimer of Warranty

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, WARRANTIES OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, NON-INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY, OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE.

Limitations of Liability

YOU ASSUME ALL RISK ASSOCIATED WITH THE INSTALLATION AND USE OF THE SOFTWARE. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS OF THE SOFTWARE BE LIABLE FOR CLAIMS, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY ARISING FROM, OUT OF, OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE. LICENSE HOLDERS ARE SOLELY RESPONSIBLE FOR DETERMINING THE APPROPRIATENESS OF USE AND ASSUME ALL RISKS ASSOCIATED WITH ITS USE, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE RISKS OF PROGRAM ERRORS, DAMAGE TO EQUIPMENT, LOSS OF DATA OR SOFTWARE PROGRAMS, OR UNAVAILABILITY OR INTERRUPTION OF OPERATIONS.

Previous Topic: [Server Requirements](#) · [Top of Page](#) · [User Guide Home](#) · Next Topic: [Change Log](#)

[CodeIgniter](#) · Copyright © 2007 · [Ellislab, Inc.](#)

Active Record Class

CodeIgniter uses a modified version of the Active Record Database Pattern. This pattern allows information to be retrieved, inserted, and updated in your database with minimal scripting. In some cases only one or two lines of code are necessary to perform a database action. CodeIgniter does not require that each database table be its own class file. It instead provides a more simplified interface.

Beyond simplicity, a major benefit to using the Active Record features is that it allows you to create database independent applications, since the query syntax is generated by each database adapter. It also allows for safer queries, since the values are escaped automatically by the system.

Note: If you intend to write your own queries you can disable this class in your database config file, allowing the core database library and adapter to utilize fewer resources.

- [Selecting Data](#)
- [Inserting Data](#)
- [Updating Data](#)
- [Deleting Data](#)
- [Method Chaining](#)

Selecting Data

The following functions allow you to build SQL **SELECT** statements.

Note: If you are using PHP 5 you can use method chaining for more compact syntax. This is described at the end of the page.

`$this->db->get();`

Runs the selection query and returns the result. Can be used by itself to retrieve all records from a table:

```
$query = $this->db->get('mytable');  
  
// Produces: SELECT * FROM mytable
```

The second and third parameters enable you to set a limit and offset clause:

```
$query = $this->db->get('mytable', 10, 20);

// Produces: SELECT * FROM mytable LIMIT 20, 10 (in MySQL. Other databases have slightly
different syntax)
```

You'll notice that the above function is assigned to a variable named **\$query**, which can be used to show the results:

```
$query = $this->db->get('mytable');

foreach ($query->result() as $row)
{
    echo $row->title;
}
```

Please visit the [result functions](#) page for a full discussion regarding result generation.

`$this->db->get_where();`

Identical to the above function except that it permits you to add a "where" clause in the second parameter, instead of using the `db->where()` function:

```
$query = $this->db->get_where('mytable', array('id' => $id), $limit, $offset);
```

Please read the about the where function below for more information.

Note: `get_where()` was formerly known as `getwhere()`, which has been deprecated

`$this->db->select();`

Permits you to write the SELECT portion of your query:

```
$this->db->select('title, content, date');

$query = $this->db->get('mytable');

// Produces: SELECT title, content, date FROM mytable
```

Note: If you are selecting all (*) from a table you do not need to use this function. When omitted, CodeIgniter assumes you wish to SELECT *

`$this->db->from()`;

Permits you to write the FROM portion of your query:

```

$this->db->select('title, content, date');
$this->db->from('mytable');

$query = $this->db->get();

// Produces: SELECT title, content, date FROM mytable

```

Note: As shown earlier, the FROM portion of your query can be specified in the `$this->db->get()` function, so use whichever method you prefer.

`$this->db->join()`;

Permits you to write the JOIN portion of your query:

```

$this->db->select('*');
$this->db->from('blogs');
$this->db->join('comments', 'comments.id = blogs.id');

$query = $this->db->get();

// Produces:
// SELECT * FROM blogs
// JOIN comments ON comments.id = blogs.id

```

Multiple function calls can be made if you need several joins in one query.

If you need something other than a natural JOIN you can specify it via the third parameter of the function. Options are: left, right, outer, inner, left outer, and right outer.

```

$this->db->join('comments', 'comments.id = blogs.id', 'left');

// Produces: LEFT JOIN comments ON comments.id = blogs.id

```

`$this->db->where()`;

This function enables you to set **WHERE** clauses using one of four methods:

Note: All values passed to this function are escaped automatically, producing safer queries.

1. Simple key/value method:

```
$this->db->where('name', $name);

// Produces: WHERE name = 'Joe'
```

Notice that the equal sign is added for you.

If you use multiple function calls they will be chained together with **AND** between them:

```
$this->db->where('name', $name);
$this->db->where('title', $title);
$this->db->where('status', $status);

// WHERE = 'Joe' AND title = 'boss' AND status = 'active'
```

2. Custom key/value method:

You can include an operator in the first parameter in order to control the comparison:

```
$this->db->where('name !=', $name);
$this->db->where('id <', $id);

// Produces: WHERE name != 'Joe' AND id < 45
```

3. Associative array method:

```
$array = array('name' => $name, 'title' => $title, 'status' => $status);
$this->db->where($array);

// Produces: WHERE name = 'Joe' AND title = 'boss' AND status = 'active'
```

You can include your own operators using this method as well:

```
$array = array('name !=' => $name, 'id <' => $id, 'date >' => $date);
$this->db->where($array);
```

4. Custom string:

You can write your own clauses manually:

```
$where = "name='Joe' AND status='boss' OR status='active'";
```

```
$this->db->where($where);
```

`$this->db->or_where()`

This function is identical to the one above, except that multiple instances are joined by OR:

```
$this->db->where('name !=', $name);
$this->db->or_where('id >', $id);

// Produces: WHERE name != 'Joe' OR id > 50
```

Note: `or_where()` was formerly known as `orwhere()`, which has been deprecated.

`$this->db->where_in()`

Generates a WHERE field IN ('item', 'item') SQL query joined with AND if appropriate

```
$names = array('Frank', 'Todd', 'James');
$this->db->where_in('username', $names);
// Produces: AND WHERE username IN ('Frank', 'Todd', 'James')
```

`$this->db->or_where_in()`

Generates a WHERE field IN ('item', 'item') SQL query joined with OR if appropriate

```
$names = array('Frank', 'Todd', 'James');
$this->db->where_in_or('username', $names);
// Produces: OR WHERE username IN ('Frank', 'Todd', 'James')
```

`$this->db->where_not_in()`

Generates a WHERE field NOT IN ('item', 'item') SQL query joined with AND if appropriate

```
$names = array('Frank', 'Todd', 'James');
$this->db->where_not_in('username', $names);
// Produces: AND WHERE username NOT IN ('Frank', 'Todd', 'James')
```

`$this->db->or_where_not_in();`

Generates a WHERE field NOT IN ('item', 'item') SQL query joined with OR if appropriate

```
$names = array('Frank', 'Todd', 'James');
$this->db->where_in('username', $names);
// Produces: OR WHERE username NOT IN ('Frank', 'Todd', 'James')
```

`$this->db->like();`

This function enables you to generate **LIKE** clauses, useful for doing searches.

Note: All values passed to this function are escaped automatically.

1. Simple key/value method:

```
$this->db->like('title', 'match');
// Produces: WHERE title LIKE '%match%'
```

If you use multiple function calls they will be chained together with **AND** between them:

```
$this->db->like('title', 'match');
$this->db->like('body', 'match');
// WHERE title LIKE '%match%' AND body LIKE '%match%'
```

If you want to control where the wildcard (%) is placed, you can use an optional third argument. Your options are 'before', 'after' and 'both' (which is the default).

```
$this->db->like('title', 'match', 'before');
// Produces: WHERE title LIKE '%match'

$this->db->like('title', 'match', 'after');
// Produces: WHERE title LIKE 'match%'

$this->db->like('title', 'match', 'both');
// Produces: WHERE title LIKE '%match%'
```

2. Associative array method:

```
$array = array('title' => $match, 'page1' => $match, 'page2' => $match);

$this->db->like($array);

// WHERE title LIKE '%match%' AND page1 LIKE '%match%' AND page2 LIKE '%match%'
```

`$this->db->or_like()`

This function is identical to the one above, except that multiple instances are joined by OR:

```
$this->db->like('title', 'match');
$this->db->or_like('body', $match);

// WHERE title LIKE '%match%' OR body LIKE '%match%'
```

Note: `or_like()` was formerly known as `orlike()`, which has been deprecated.

`$this->db->not_like()`

This function is identical to **`like()`**, except that it generates NOT LIKE statements:

```
$this->db->not_like('title', 'match');

// WHERE title NOT LIKE '%match%'
```

`$this->db->or_not_like()`

This function is identical to **`not_like()`**, except that multiple instances are joined by OR:

```
$this->db->like('title', 'match');
$this->db->or_not_like('body', 'match');

// WHERE title LIKE '%match%' OR body NOT LIKE 'match'
```

`$this->db->group_by()`

Permits you to write the GROUP BY portion of your query:

```
$this->db->group_by("title");

// Produces: GROUP BY title
```

You can also pass an array of multiple values as well:

```
$this->db->group_by(array("title", "date"));

// Produces: GROUP BY title, date
```

Note: `group_by()` was formerly known as `groupby()`, which has been deprecated.

`$this->db->having()`;

Permits you to write the HAVING portion of your query:

```
$this->db->having('user_id = 45');

// Produces: HAVING 'user_id = 45'
```

You can also pass an array of multiple values as well:

```
$this->db->having(array('title =' => 'My Title', 'id <' => $id));

// Produces: HAVING title = 'My Title', 'id < 45'
```

`$this->db->order_by()`;

Lets you set an ORDER BY clause. The first parameter contains the name of the column you would like to order by. The second parameter lets you set the direction of the result. Options are **asc** or **desc**, or **random**.

```
$this->db->order_by("title", "desc");

// Produces: ORDER BY title DESC
```

You can also pass your own string in the first parameter:

```
$this->db->order_by('title desc, name asc');

// Produces: ORDER BY title DESC, name ASC
```

Or multiple function calls can be made if you need multiple fields.

```
$this->db->order_by("title", "desc");
$this->db->order_by("name", "asc");

// Produces: ORDER BY title DESC, name ASC
```

Note: `order_by()` was formerly known as `orderby()`, which has been deprecated.

Note: random ordering is not currently supported in Oracle or MSSQL drivers.

`$this->db->limit()`

Lets you limit the number of rows you would like returned by the query:

```
$this->db->limit(10);

// Produces: LIMIT 10
```

The second parameter lets you set a result offset.

```
$this->db->limit(10, 20);

// Produces: LIMIT 20, 10 (in MySQL. Other databases have slightly different syntax)
```

`$this->db->count_all_results()`

Permits you to determine the number of rows in a particular Active Record query. Queries will accept Active Record restrictors such as `where()`, `or_where()`, `like()`, `or_like()`, etc. Example:

```
echo $this->db->count_all_results('my_table');
// Produces an integer, like 25

$this->db->like('title', 'match');
$this->db->from('my_table');
echo $this->db->count_all_results();
// Produces an integer, like 17
```

`$this->db->count_all()`

Permits you to determine the number of rows in a particular table. Submit the

table name in the first parameter. Example:

```
echo $this->db->count_all('my_table');

// Produces an integer, like 25
```

Inserting Data

`$this->db->insert()`;

Generates an insert string based on the data you supply, and runs the query. You can either pass an **array** or an **object** to the function. Here is an example using an array:

```
$data = array(
    'title' => 'My title' ,
    'name' => 'My Name' ,
    'date' => 'My date'
);

$this->db->insert('mytable', $data);

// Produces: INSERT INTO mytable (title, name, date) VALUES ('My title', 'My name', 'My date')
```

The first parameter will contain the table name, the second is an associative array of values.

Here is an example using an object:

```
/*
class Myclass {
    var $title = 'My Title';
    var $content = 'My Content';
    var $date = 'My Date';
}
*/

$object = new Myclass;

$this->db->insert('mytable', $object);

// Produces: INSERT INTO mytable (title, content, date) VALUES ('My Title', 'My Content', 'My Date')
```

The first parameter will contain the table name, the second is an associative array of values.

Note: All values are escaped automatically producing safer queries.

`$this->db->set();`

This function enables you to set values for **inserts** or **updates**.

It can be used instead of passing a data array directly to the insert or update functions:

```
$this->db->set('name', $name);
$this->db->insert('mytable');

// Produces: INSERT INTO mytable (name) VALUES ('{$name}')
```

If you use multiple function called they will be assembled properly based on whether you are doing an insert or an update:

```
$this->db->set('name', $name);
$this->db->set('title', $title);
$this->db->set('status', $status);
$this->db->insert('mytable');
```

You can also pass an associative array to this function:

```
$array = array('name' => $name, 'title' => $title, 'status' => $status);

$this->db->set($array);
$this->db->insert('mytable');
```

Or an object:

```
/*
    class Myclass {
        var $title = 'My Title';
        var $content = 'My Content';
        var $date = 'My Date';
    }
*/

$object = new Myclass;

$this->db->set($object);
$this->db->insert('mytable');
```

Updating Data

`$this->db->update()`;

Generates an update string and runs the query based on the data you supply. You can pass an **array** or an **object** to the function. Here is an example using an array:

```
$data = array(
    'title' => $title,
    'name' => $name,
    'date' => $date
);

$this->db->where('id', $id);
$this->db->update('mytable', $data);

// Produces:
// UPDATE mytable
// SET title = '{$title}', name = '{$name}', date = '{$date}'
// WHERE id = $id
```

Or you can supply an object:

```
/*
class MyClass {
    var $title = 'My Title';
    var $content = 'My Content';
    var $date = 'My Date';
}
*/

$object = new MyClass;

$this->db->where('id', $id);
$this->db->update('mytable', $object);

// Produces:
// UPDATE mytable
// SET title = '{$title}', name = '{$name}', date = '{$date}'
// WHERE id = $id
```

Note: All values are escaped automatically producing safer queries.

You'll notice the use of the **`$this->db->where()`** function, enabling you to set the WHERE clause. You can optionally pass this information directly into the update function as a string:

```
$this->db->update('mytable', $data, "id = 4");
```

Or as an array:

```
$this->db->update('mytable', $data, array('id' => $id));
```

You may also use the **`$this->db->set()`** function described above when performing updates.

Deleting Data

`$this->db->delete()`;

Generates a delete SQL string and runs the query.

```
$this->db->delete('mytable', array('id' => $id));

// Produces:
// DELETE FROM mytable
// WHERE id = $id
```

The first parameter is the table name, the second is the where clause. You can also use the **`where()`** or **`or_where()`** functions instead of passing the data to the second parameter of the function:

```
$this->db->where('id', $id);
$this->db->delete('mytable');

// Produces:
// DELETE FROM mytable
// WHERE id = $id
```

An array of table names can be passed into `delete()` if you would like to delete data from more than 1 table.

```
$tables = array('table1', 'table2', 'table3');
$this->db->where('id', '5');
$this->db->delete($tables);
```

Note: All values are escaped automatically producing safer queries.

Method Chaining

Method chaining allows you to simplify your syntax by connecting multiple functions. Consider this example:

```
$this->db->select('title')->from('mytable')->where('id', $id)->limit(10, 20);  
  
$query = $this->db->get();
```

Note: Method chaining only works with PHP 5.

[Previous Topic: Query Helper Functions](#) · [Top of Page](#) · [User Guide Home](#) · [Next Topic: Transactions](#)

[CodeIgniter](#) · Copyright © 2007 · [Ellislab, Inc.](#)

Connecting to your Database

There are two ways to connect to a database:

Automatically Connecting

The "auto connect" feature will load and instantiate the database class with every page load. To enable "auto connecting", add the word **database** to the core array, as indicated in the following file:

application/config/autoload.php

Manually Connecting

If only some of your pages require database connectivity you can manually connect to your database by adding this line of code in any function where it is needed, or in your class constructor to make the database available globally in that class.

```
$this->load->database();
```

If the above function does **not** contain any information in the first parameter it will connect to the group specified in your database config file. For most people, this is the preferred method of use.

The first parameter of this function can **optionally** be used to specify a particular database group from your config file, or you can even submit connection values for a database that is not specified in your config file. Examples:

To choose a specific group from your config file you can do this:

```
$this->load->database('group_name');
```

Where **group_name** is the name of the connection group from your config file.

To connect manually to a desired database you can pass an array of values:

```
$config['hostname'] = "localhost";
```

```
$config['username'] = "myusername";
$config['password'] = "mypassword";
$config['database'] = "mydatabase";
$config['dbdriver'] = "mysql";
$config['dbprefix'] = "";
$config['pconnect'] = FALSE;
$config['db_debug'] = TRUE;
$config['active_r'] = TRUE;

$this->load->database($config);
```

For information on each of these values please see the [configuration page](#).

Or you can submit your database values as a Data Source Name. DSNs must have this prototype:

```
$dsn = 'dbdriver://username:password@hostname/database';

$this->load->database($dsn);
```

Note that if you use a DSN you will not be able to specify some of the default values like you can if you use a connection array.

Connecting to Multiple Databases

If you need to connect to more than one database simultaneously you can do so as follows:

```
$DB1 = $this->load->database('group_one', TRUE);
$DB2 = $this->load->database('group_two', TRUE);
```

Note: Change the words "group_one" and "group_two" to the specific group names you are connecting to (or you can pass the connection values as indicated above).

By setting the second parameter to TRUE (boolean) the function will return the database object.

When you connect this way, you will use your object name to issue commands rather than the syntax used throughout this guide. In other words, rather than issuing commands with:

```
$this->db->query();
$this->db->result();
etc...
```

You will instead use:

```
$DB1->query();  
$DB1->result();  
etc...
```

Previous Topic: [Database Configuration](#) · [Top of Page](#) · [User Guide Home](#) · Next Topic: [Queries](#)

[CodeIgniter](#) · Copyright © 2007 · [Ellislab, Inc.](#)

Helper Functions

Helpers, as the name suggests, help you with tasks. Each helper file is simply a collection of functions in a particular category. There are **URL Helpers**, that assist in creating links, there are **Form Helpers** that help you create form elements, **Text Helpers** perform various text formatting routines, **Cookie Helpers** set and read cookies, **File Helpers** help you deal with files, etc.

Unlike most other systems in CodeIgniter, Helpers are not written in an Object Oriented format. They are simple, procedural functions. Each helper function performs one specific task, with no dependence on other functions.

CodeIgniter does not load Helper Files by default, so the first step in using a Helper is to load it. Once loaded, it becomes globally available in your [controller](#) and [views](#).

Helpers are typically stored in your **system/helpers** directory. Alternately you can create a folder called **helpers** inside your **application** folder and store them there. CodeIgniter will look first in your **system/application/helpers** directory. If the directory does not exist or the specified helper is not located there CI will instead look in your global **system/helpers** folder.

Loading a Helper

Loading a helper file is quite simple using the following function:

```
$this->load->helper('name');
```

Where **name** is the file name of the helper, without the .php file extension or the "helper" part.

For example, to load the **URL Helper** file, which is named **url_helper.php**, you would do this:


```
$this->load->helper('url');
```

A helper can be loaded anywhere within your controller functions (or even within your View files, although that's not a good practice), as long as you load it before you use it. You can load your helpers in your controller constructor so that they become available automatically in any function, or you can load a helper in a specific function that needs it.

Note: The Helper loading function above does not return a value, so don't try to assign it to a variable. Just use it as shown.

Loading Multiple Helpers

If you need to load more than one helper you can specify them in an array, like this:

```
$this->load->helper( array('helper1', 'helper2', 'helper3') );
```

Auto-loading Helpers

If you find that you need a particular helper globally throughout your application, you can tell CodeIgniter to auto-load it during system initialization. This is done by opening the **application/config/autoload.php** file and adding the helper to the autoload array.

Using a Helper

Once you've loaded the Helper File containing the function you intend to use, you'll call it the way you would a standard PHP function.

For example, to create a link using the **anchor()** function in one of your view files you would do this:

```
<?=anchor('blog/comments', 'Click Here');?>
```

Where "Click Here" is the name of the link, and "blog/comments" is the URI to the controller/function you wish to link to.

Now What?

In the Table of Contents you'll find a list of all the available Helper Files. Browse each one to see what they do.

Previous Topic: [Models](#) · [Top of Page](#) · [User Guide Home](#) · Next Topic: [Plugins](#)

[CodeIgniter](#) · Copyright © 2007 · [Ellislab, Inc.](#)

Trackback Class

The Trackback Class provides functions that enable you to send and receive Trackback data.

If you are not familiar with Trackbacks you'll find more information [here](#).

Initializing the Class

Like most other classes in CodeIgniter, the Trackback class is initialized in your controller using the **`$this->load->library`** function:

```
$this->load->library('trackback');
```

Once loaded, the Trackback library object will be available using: **`$this->trackback`**

Sending Trackbacks

A Trackback can be sent from any of your controller functions using code similar to this example:

```
$this->load->library('trackback');

$tb_data = array(
    'ping_url' => 'http://example.com/trackback/456',
    'url'      => 'http://www.my-example.com/blog/entry/123',
    'title'    => 'The Title of My Entry',
    'excerpt'  => 'The entry content.',
    'blog_name' => 'My Blog Name',
    'charset'  => 'utf-8'
);

if ( ! $this->trackback->send($tb_data))
{
```

```

    echo $this->trackback->display_errors();
}
else
{
    echo 'Trackback was sent!';
}

```

Description of array data:

- **ping_url** - The URL of the site you are sending the Trackback to. You can send Trackbacks to multiple URLs by separating each URL with a comma.
- **url** - The URL to YOUR site where the weblog entry can be seen.
- **title** - The title of your weblog entry.
- **excerpt** - The content of your weblog entry. Note: the Trackback class will automatically send only the first 500 characters of your entry. It will also strip all HTML.
- **blog_name** - The name of your weblog.
- **charset** - The character encoding your weblog is written in. If omitted, UTF-8 will be used.

The Trackback sending function returns TRUE/FALSE (boolean) on success or failure. If it fails, you can retrieve the error message using:

```

$this->trackback->display_errors();

```

Receiving Trackbacks

Before you can receive Trackbacks you must create a weblog. If you don't have a blog yet there's no point in continuing.

Receiving Trackbacks is a little more complex than sending them, only because you will need a database table in which to store them, and you will need to validate the incoming trackback data. You are encouraged to implement a thorough validation process to guard against spam and duplicate data. You may also want to limit the number of Trackbacks you allow from a particular IP within a given span of time to further curtail spam. The process of receiving a Trackback is quite simple; the validation is what takes most of the

effort.

Your Ping URL

In order to accept Trackbacks you must display a Trackback URL next to each one of your weblog entries. This will be the URL that people will use to send you Trackbacks (we will refer to this as your "Ping URL").

Your Ping URL must point to a controller function where your Trackback receiving code is located, and the URL must contain the ID number for each particular entry, so that when the Trackback is received you'll be able to associate it with a particular entry.

For example, if your controller class is called **Trackback**, and the receiving function is called **receive**, your Ping URLs will look something like this:

```
http://www.your-site.com/index.php/trackback/receive/entry_id
```

Where **entry_id** represents the individual ID number for each of your entries.

Creating a Trackback Table

Before you can receive Trackbacks you must create a table in which to store them. Here is a basic prototype for such a table:

The Trackback specification only requires four pieces of information to be sent in a Trackback (url, title, excerpt, blog_name), but to

make the data more useful we've added a few more fields in the above table schema (date, IP address, etc.).

Processing a Trackback

Here is an example showing how you will receive and process a Trackback. The following code is intended for use within the controller function where you expect to receive Trackbacks.

```
$this->load->library('trackback');
$this->load->database();

if ($this->uri->segment(3) == FALSE)
{
    $this->trackback->send_error("Unable to determine the entry ID");
}

if ( ! $this->trackback->receive() )
{
    $this->trackback->send_error("The Trackback did not contain valid data");
}

$data = array(
    'tb_id'      => "",
    'entry_id'   => $this->uri->segment(3),
    'url'        => $this->trackback->data('url'),
    'title'      => $this->trackback->data('title'),
    'excerpt'    => $this->trackback->data('excerpt'),
    'blog_name'  => $this->trackback->data('blog_name'),
    'tb_date'    => time(),
    'ip_address' => $this->input->ip_address()
);

$sql = $this->db->insert_string('trackbacks', $data);
$this->db->query($sql);

$this->trackback->send_success();
```

Notes:

The entry ID number is expected in the third segment of your URL. This is based on the URI example we gave earlier:

```
http://www.your-site.com/index.php/trackback/receive/entry_id
```

Notice the `entry_id` is in the third URI, which you can retrieve using:

```
$this->uri->segment(3);
```

In our Trackback receiving code above, if the third segment is missing, we will issue an error. Without a valid entry ID, there's no reason to continue.

The **`$this->trackback->receive()`** function is simply a validation function that looks at the incoming data and makes sure it contains the four pieces of data that are required (url, title, excerpt, blog_name). It returns TRUE on success and FALSE on failure. If it fails you will issue an error message.

The incoming Trackback data can be retrieved using this function:

```
$this->trackback->data('item')
```

Where **`item`** represents one of these four pieces of info: url, title, excerpt, or blog_name

If the Trackback data is successfully received, you will issue a success message using:

```
$this->trackback->send_success();
```

Note: The above code contains no data validation, which you are encouraged to add.

Input Class

The Input Class serves two purposes:

1. It pre-processes global input data for security.
2. It provides some helper functions for fetching input data and pre-processing it.

Note: This class is initialized automatically by the system so there is no need to do it manually.

Security Filtering

The security filtering function is called automatically when a new [controller](#) is invoked. It does the following:

- Destroys the global GET array. Since CodeIgniter does not utilize GET strings, there is no reason to allow it.
- Destroys all global variables in the event `register_globals` is turned on.
- Filters the POST/COOKIE array keys, permitting only alpha-numeric (and a few other) characters.
- Provides XSS (Cross-site Scripting Hacks) filtering. This can be enabled globally, or upon request.
- Standardizes newline characters to `\n`

XSS Filtering

CodeIgniter comes with a Cross Site Scripting Hack prevention filter which can either run automatically to filter all POST and COOKIE data that is encountered, or you can run it on a per item basis. By default it does **not** run globally since it requires a bit of processing overhead, and since you may not need it in all cases.

The XSS filter looks for commonly used techniques to trigger Javascript or other types of code that attempt to hijack cookies or do other malicious things. If anything disallowed is encountered it is rendered safe

by converting the data to character entities.

Note: This function should only be used to deal with data upon submission. It's not something that should be used for general runtime processing since it requires a fair amount of processing overhead.

To filter data through the XSS filter use this function:

`$this->input->xss_clean()`

Here is an usage example:

```
$data = $this->input->xss_clean($data);
```

If you want the filter to run automatically every time it encounters POST or COOKIE data you can enable it by opening your **application/config/config.php** file and setting this:

```
$config['global_xss_filtering'] = TRUE;
```

Note: If you use the form validation class, it gives you the option of XSS filtering as well.

Using POST, COOKIE, or SERVER Data

CodeIgniter comes with three helper functions that let you fetch POST, COOKIE or SERVER items. The main advantage of using the provided functions rather than fetching an item directly (`$_POST['something']`) is that the functions will check to see if the item is set and return false (boolean) if not. This lets you conveniently use data without having to test whether an item exists first. In other words, normally you might do something like this:

```
if ( ! isset($_POST['something']))
{
    $something = FALSE;
}
else
{
    $something = $_POST['something'];
}
```

With CodeIgniter's built in functions you can simply do this:

```
$something = $this->input->post('something');
```

The three functions are:

- `$this->input->post()`
- `$this->input->cookie()`
- `$this->input->server()`

`$this->input->post()`

The first parameter will contain the name of the POST item you are looking for:

```
$this->input->post('some_data');
```

The function returns FALSE (boolean) if the item you are attempting to retrieve does not exist.

The second optional parameter lets you run the data through the XSS filter. It's enabled by setting the second parameter to boolean TRUE;

```
$this->input->post('some_data', TRUE);
```

`$this->input->cookie()`

This function is identical to the post function, only it fetches cookie data:

```
$this->input->cookie('some_data', TRUE);
```

`$this->input->server()`

This function is identical to the above functions, only it fetches server data:

```
$this->input->server('some_data');
```

`$this->input->ip_address()`

Returns the IP address for the current user. If the IP address is not valid, the function will return an IP of: 0.0.0.0

```
echo $this->input->ip_address();
```

`$this->input->valid_ip($ip)`

Takes an IP address as input and returns TRUE or FALSE (boolean) if it is valid or not. Note: The `$this->input->ip_address()` function above validates the IP automatically.

```
if ( ! valid_ip($ip))
{
    echo 'Not Valid';
}
else
{
    echo 'Valid';
}
```

`$this->input->user_agent()`

Returns the user agent (web browser) being used by the current user. Returns FALSE if it's not available.

```
echo $this->input->user_agent();
```

XML-RPC and XML-RPC Server Classes

CodeIgniter's XML-RPC classes permit you to send requests to another server, or set up your own XML-RPC server to receive requests.

What is XML-RPC?

Quite simply it is a way for two computers to communicate over the internet using XML. One computer, which we will call the **client**, sends an XML-RPC **request** to another computer, which we will call the **server**. Once the server receives and processes the request it will send back a **response** to the client.

For example, using the MetaWeblog API, an XML-RPC Client (usually a desktop publishing tool) will send a request to an XML-RPC Server running on your site. This request might be a new weblog entry being sent for publication, or it could be a request for an existing entry for editing. When the XML-RPC Server receives this request it will examine it to determine which class/method should be called to process the request. Once processed, the server will then send back a response message.

For detailed specifications, you can visit the [XML-RPC](#) site.

Initializing the Class

Like most other classes in CodeIgniter, the XML-RPC and XML-RPCS classes are initialized in your controller using the **`$this->load->library`** function:

To load the XML-RPC class you will use:

```
$this->load->library('xmlrpc');
```

Once loaded, the xml-rpc library object will be available using: **`$this->xmlrpc`**

To load the XML-RPC Server class you will use:

```
$this->load->library('xmlrpc');  
$this->load->library('xmlrpcs');
```

Once loaded, the xml-rpcs library object will be available using: **`$this->xmlrpcs`**

Note: When using the XML-RPC Server class you must load BOTH the XML-RPC class and the XML-RPC Server class.

Sending XML-RPC Requests

To send a request to an XML-RPC server you must specify the following information:

- The URL of the server
- The method on the server you wish to call
- The *request* data (explained below).

Here is a basic example that sends a simple Weblogs.com ping to the [Ping-o-Matic](#)

```
$this->load->library('xmlrpc');

$this->xmlrpc->server('http://rpc.pingomatic.com/', 80);
$this->xmlrpc->method('weblogUpdates.ping');

$request = array('My Photoblog', 'http://www.my-site.com/photoblog/');
$this->xmlrpc->request($request);

if ( ! $this->xmlrpc->send_request() )
{
    echo $this->xmlrpc->display_error();
}
```

Explanation

The above code initializes the XML-RPC class, sets the server URL and method to be called (weblogUpdates.ping). The request (in this case, the title and URL of your site) is placed into an array for transportation, and compiled using the request() function. Lastly, the full request is sent. If the **send_request()** method returns false we will display the error message sent back from the XML-RPC Server.

Anatomy of a Request

An XML-RPC **request** is simply the data you are sending to the XML-RPC server. Each piece of data in a request is referred to as a **request parameter**. The above example has two parameters: The URL and title of your site. When the XML-RPC server receives your request, it will look for parameters it requires.

Request parameters must be placed into an array for transportation, and each parameter can be one of seven data types (strings, numbers, dates, etc.). If your parameters are something other than strings you will have to include the data type in the request array.

Here is an example of a simple array with three parameters:

```
$request = array('John', 'Doe', 'www.some-site.com');
$this->xmlrpc->request($request);
```

If you use data types other than strings, or if you have several different data

types, you will place each parameter into its own array, with the data type in the second position:

```
$request = array (
    array('John', 'string'),
    array('Doe', 'string'),
    array(FALSE, 'boolean'),
    array(12345, 'int')
);
$this->xmlrpc->request($request);
```

The [Data Types](#) section below has a full list of data types.

Creating an XML-RPC Server

An XML-RPC Server acts as a traffic cop of sorts, waiting for incoming requests and redirecting them to the appropriate functions for processing.

To create your own XML-RPC server involves initializing the XML-RPC Server class in your controller where you expect the incoming request to appear, then setting up an array with mapping instructions so that incoming requests can be sent to the appropriate class and method for processing.

Here is an example to illustrate:

```
$this->load->library('xmlrpc');
$this->load->library('xmlrpcs');

$config['functions']['new_post'] = array('function' => 'My_blog.new_entry');
$config['functions']['update_post'] = array('function' => 'My_blog.update_entry');

$this->xmlrpcs->initialize($config);
$this->xmlrpcs->serve();
```

The above example contains an array specifying two method requests that the Server allows. The allowed methods are on the left side of the array. When either of those are received, they will be mapped to the class and method on the right.

In other words, if an XML-RPC Client sends a request for the **new_post** method, your server will load the **My_blog** class and call the **new_entry** function. If the request is for the **update_post** method, your server will load the **My_blog** class and call the **update_entry** function.

The function names in the above example are arbitrary. You'll decide what they should be called on your server, or if you are using standardized APIs, like the Blogger or MetaWeblog API, you'll use their function names.

Processing Server Requests

When the XML-RPC Server receives a request and loads the class/method for

processing, it will pass an object to that method containing the data sent by the client.

Using the above example, if the **new_post** method is requested, the server will expect a class to exist with this prototype:

```
class My_blog extends Controller {
    function new_post($request)
    {
    }
}
```

The **\$request** variable is an object compiled by the Server, which contains the data sent by the XML-RPC Client. Using this object you will have access to the *request parameters* enabling you to process the request. When you are done you will send a **Response** back to the Client.

Below is a real-world example, using the Blogger API. One of the methods in the Blogger API is **getUserInfo()**. Using this method, an XML-RPC Client can send the Server a username and password, in return the Server sends back information about that particular user (nickname, user ID, email address, etc.). Here is how the processing function might look:

```
class My_blog extends Controller {
    function getUserInfo($request)
    {
        $username = 'smitty';
        $password = 'secretmittypass';

        $this->load->library('xmlrpc');

        $parameters = $request->output_parameters();

        if ($parameters['1'] != $username AND $parameters['2'] != $password)
        {
            return $this->xmlrpc->send_error_message('100', 'Invalid Access');
        }

        $response = array(array('nickname' => array('Smitty', 'string'),
                                'userid'   => array('99', 'string'),
                                'url'      => array('http://yoursite.com', 'string'),
                                'email'    => array('jsmith@yoursite.com', 'string'),
                                'lastname' => array('Smith', 'string'),
                                'firstname' => array('John', 'string')
                                ),
                            'struct');

        return $this->xmlrpc->send_response($response);
    }
}
```

Notes:

The **output_parameters()** function retrieves an indexed array corresponding to the request parameters sent by the client. In the above example, the output parameters will be the username and password.

If the username and password sent by the client were not valid, and error message is returned using **send_error_message()**.

If the operation was successful, the client will be sent back a response array containing the user's info.

Formatting a Response

Similar to *Requests*, *Responses* must be formatted as an array. However, unlike requests, a response is an array **that contains a single item**. This item can be an array with several additional arrays, but there can be only one primary array index. In other words, the basic prototype is this:

```
$response = array('Response data', 'array');
```

Responses, however, usually contain multiple pieces of information. In order to accomplish this we must put the response into its own array so that the primary array continues to contain a single piece of data. Here's an example showing how this might be accomplished:

```
$response = array (
    array(
        'first_name' => array('John', 'string'),
        'last_name' => array('Doe', 'string'),
        'member_id' => array(123435, 'int'),
        'todo_list' => array(array('clean house', 'call mom', 'water plants'), 'array'),
    ),
    'struct'
);
```

Notice that the above array is formatted as a **struct**. This is the most common data type for responses.

As with Requests, a response can be on of the seven data types listed in the [Data Types](#) section.

Sending an Error Response

If you need to send the client an error response you will use the following:

```
return $this->xmlrpc->send_error_message('123', 'Requested data not available');
```


The first parameter is the error number while the second parameter is the error message.

Creating Your Own Client and Server

To help you understand everything we've covered thus far, let's create a couple controllers that act as XML-RPC Client and Server. You'll use the Client to send a request to the Server and receive a response.

The Client

Using a text editor, create a controller called **xmlrpc_client.php**. In it, place this code and save it to your **applications/controllers/** folder:

Note: In the above code we are using a "url helper". You can find more information in the [Helpers Functions](#) page.

The Server

Using a text editor, create a controller called **xmlrpc_server.php**. In it, place this code and save it to your **applications/controllers/** folder:

Try it!

Now visit the your site using a URL similar to this:

```
www.your-site.com/index.php/xmlrpc_client/
```

You should now see the message you sent to the server, and its response back to you.

The client you created sends a message ("How's is going?") to the server, along with a request for the "Greetings" method. The Server receives the request and maps it to the "process" function, where a response is sent back.

XML-RPC Function Reference

`$this->xmlrpc->server()`

Sets the URL and port number of the server to which a request is to be sent:

```
$this->xmlrpc->server('http://www.sometimes.com/pings.php', 80);
```

`$this->xmlrpc->timeout()`

Set a time out period (in seconds) after which the request will be canceled:

```
$this->xmlrpc->timeout(6);
```

`$this->xmlrpc->method()`

Sets the method that will be requested from the XML-RPC server:

```
$this->xmlrpc->method('method');
```

Where **method** is the name of the method.

`$this->xmlrpc->request()`

Takes an array of data and builds request to be sent to XML-RPC server:

```
$request = array(array('My Photoblog', 'string'), 'http://www.yoursite.com/photoblog/');  
$this->xmlrpc->request($request);
```

`$this->xmlrpc->send_request()`

The request sending function. Returns boolean TRUE or FALSE based on success for failure, enabling it to be used conditionally.

`$this->xmlrpc->set_debug(TRUE);`

Enables debugging, which will display a variety of information and error data helpful during development.

`$this->xmlrpc->display_error()`

Returns an error message as a string if your request failed for some reason.

```
echo $this->xmlrpc->display_error();
```

`$this->xmlrpc->display_response()`

Returns the response from the remote server once request is received. The

response will typically be an associative array.

```
$this->xmlrpc->display_response();
```

`$this->xmlrpc->send_error_message()`

This function lets you send an error message from your server to the client. First parameter is the error number while the second parameter is the error message.

```
return $this->xmlrpc->send_error_message('123', 'Requested data not available');
```

`$this->xmlrpc->send_response()`

Lets you send the response from your server to the client. An array of valid data values must be sent with this method.

```
$response = array(
    array(
        'flerror' => array(FALSE, 'boolean'),
        'message' => "Thanks for the ping!")
    )
    'struct');
return $this->xmlrpc->send_response($response);
```

Data Types

According to the [XML-RPC spec](#) there are seven types of values that you can send via XML-RPC:

- *int* or *i4*
- *boolean*
- *string*
- *double*
- *dateTime.iso8601*
- *base64*
- *struct* (contains array of values)
- *array* (contains array of values)

String Helper

The String Helper file contains functions that assist in working with strings.

Loading this Helper

This helper is loaded using the following code:

```
$this->load->helper('string');
```

The following functions are available:

random_string()

Generates a random string based on the type and length you specify. Useful for creating passwords or generating random hashes.

The first parameter specifies the type of string, the second parameter specifies the length. The following choices are available:

- **alnum**: Alpha-numeric string with lower and uppercase characters.
- **numeric**: Numeric string.
- **nozero**: Numeric string with no zeros.
- **unique**: Encrypted with MD5 and uniqid(). Note: The length parameter is not available for this type. Returns a fixed length 33 character string.

Usage example:

```
echo random_string('alnum', 16);
```

alternator()

Allows two or more items to be alternated between, when cycling through a loop. Example:

```
for ($i = 0; $i < 10; $i++)  
{  
    echo alternator('string one', 'string two');  
}
```

You can add as many parameters as you want, and with each iteration of your loop the next item will be returned.

```
for ($i = 0; $i < 10; $i++)  
{  
    echo alternator('one', 'two', 'three', 'four', 'five');  
}
```

Note: To use multiple separate calls to this function simply call the function with no arguments to re-initialize.

repeater()

Generates repeating copies of the data you submit. Example:

```
$string = "\n";  
echo repeater($string, 30);
```

The above would generate 30 newlines.

reduce_double_slashes()

Converts double slashes in a string to a single slash, except those found in http://. Example:

```
$string = "http://www.example.com//index.php";  
echo reduce_double_slashes($string); // results in "http://www.example.com/  
index.php"
```

trim_slashes()

Removes any leading/trailing slashes from a string. Example:

```
$string = "/this/that/theother/";
echo trim_slashes($string); // results in this/that/theother
```

reduce_multiples()

Reduces multiple instances of a particular character occuring directly after each other. Example:

```
$string="Fred, Bill,, Joe, Jimmy";
$string=reduce_multiples($string,","); //results in "Fred, Bill, Joe, Jimmy"
```

The function accepts the following parameters:

```
reduce_multiples(string: text to search in, string: character to reduce,
boolean: whether to remove the character from the front and end of the
string)
```

The first parameter contrains the string in which you want to reduce the multiplies. The second parameter contains the character you want to have reduced. The third parameter is False by default. If it it's to true it will remove occurences of the character at the beginning and the end of the string. Example:

```
$string=",Fred, Bill,, Joe, Jimmy,";
$string=reduce_multiples($string,",",true); //results in "Fred, Bill, Joe,
Jimmy"
```

quotes_to_entities()

Converts single and double quotes in a string to the corresponding HTML entities. Example:

```
$string="Joe's \"dinner\"";
```



```
$string=quotes_to_entities($string); //results in "Joe's &quot;  
dinner&quot;"
```

strip_quotes()

Removes single and double quotes from a string. Example:

```
$string="Joe's \"dinner\"";  
$string=strip_quotes($string); //results in "Joes dinner"
```

Previous Topic: [Smiley Helper](#) · [Top of Page](#) · [User Guide Home](#) · Next Topic: [Text Helper](#)

[CodeIgniter](#) · Copyright © 2007 · [Ellislab, Inc.](#)

Database Quick Start: Example Code

The following page contains example code showing how the database class is used. For complete details please read the individual pages describing each function.

Initializing the Database Class

The following code loads and initializes the database class based on your [configuration](#) settings:

```
$this->load->database();
```

Once loaded the class is ready to be used as described below.

Note: If all your pages require database access you can connect automatically. See the [connecting](#) page for details.

Standard Query With Multiple Results (Object Version)

```
$query = $this->db->query('SELECT name, title, email FROM my_table');

foreach ($query->result() as $row)
{
    echo $row->title;
    echo $row->name;
    echo $row->email;
}

echo 'Total Results: ' . $query->num_rows();
```

The above **result()** function returns an array of **objects**. Example: `$row->title`

Standard Query With Multiple Results (Array Version)

```
$query = $this->db->query('SELECT name, title, email FROM my_table');

foreach ($query->result_array() as $row)
{
    echo $row['title'];
    echo $row['name'];
    echo $row['email'];
}
```

The above **result_array()** function returns an array of standard array indexes.

Example: `$row['title']`

Testing for Results

If you run queries that might **not** produce a result, you are encouraged to test for a result first using the **num_rows()** function:

```
$query = $this->db->query("YOUR QUERY");

if ($query->num_rows() > 0)
{
    foreach ($query->result() as $row)
    {
        echo $row->title;
        echo $row->name;
        echo $row->body;
    }
}
```

Standard Query With Single Result

```
$query = $this->db->query('SELECT name FROM my_table LIMIT 1');

$row = $query->row();
echo $row->name;
```

The above **row()** function returns an **object**. Example: `$row->name`

Standard Query With Single Result (Array version)

```
$query = $this->db->query('SELECT name FROM my_table LIMIT 1');

$row = $query->row_array();
echo $row['name'];
```

The above **row_array()** function returns an **array**. Example: `$row['name']`

Standard Insert

```
$sql = "INSERT INTO mytable (title, name)
        VALUES (".$this->db->escape($title).", ".$this->db->escape($name).")";

$this->db->query($sql);

echo $this->db->affected_rows();
```

Active Record Query

The [Active Record Pattern](#) gives you a simplified means of retrieving data:

```
$query = $this->db->get('table_name');  
  
foreach ($query->result() as $row)  
{  
    echo $row->title;  
}
```

The above **get()** function retrieves all the results from the supplied table. The [Active Record](#) class contains a full compliment of functions for working with data.

Active Record Insert

```
$data = array(  
    'title' => $title,  
    'name' => $name,  
    'date' => $date  
);  
  
$this->db->insert('mytable', $data);  
  
// Produces: INSERT INTO mytable (title, name, date) VALUES ('{$title}', '{$name}', '{$date}')
```

Previous Topic: [Database Class](#) · [Top of Page](#) · [User Guide Home](#) · Next Topic: [Database Configuration](#)

CodeIgniter · Copyright © 2007 · Ellislab, Inc.

Database Configuration

CodeIgniter has a config file that lets you store your database connection values (username, password, database name, etc.). The config file is located at:

application/config/database.php

The config settings are stored in a multi-dimensional array with this prototype:

```
$db['default']['hostname'] = "localhost";
$db['default']['username'] = "root";
$db['default']['password'] = "";
$db['default']['database'] = "database_name";
$db['default']['dbdriver'] = "mysql";
$db['default']['dbprefix'] = "";
$db['default']['pconnect'] = TRUE;
$db['default']['db_debug'] = FALSE;
$db['default']['active_r'] = TRUE;
```

The reason we use a multi-dimensional array rather than a more simple one is to permit you to optionally store multiple sets of connection values. If, for example, you run multiple environments (development, production, test, etc.) under a single installation, you can set up a connection group for each, then switch between groups as needed. For example, to set up a "test" environment you would do this:

```
$db['test']['hostname'] = "localhost";
$db['test']['username'] = "root";
$db['test']['password'] = "";
$db['test']['database'] = "database_name";
$db['test']['dbdriver'] = "mysql";
$db['test']['dbprefix'] = "";
$db['test']['pconnect'] = TRUE;
$db['test']['db_debug'] = FALSE;
$db['test']['active_r'] = TRUE;
```

Then, to globally tell the system to use that group you would set this variable located in the config file:

```
$active_group = "test";
```

Note: The name "test" is arbitrary. It can be anything you want. By default we've used the word "default" for the primary connection, but it too can be renamed to something more relevant to your project.

Explanation of Values:

- **hostname** - The hostname of your database server. Often this is "localhost".
- **username** - The username used to connect to the database.
- **password** - The password used to connect to the database.
- **database** - The name of the database you want to connect to.
- **dbdriver** - The database type. ie: mysql, postgres, obdc, etc. Must be specified in lower case.
- **dbprefix** - An optional table prefix which will added to the table name when running [Active Record](#) queries. This permits multiple CodeIgniter installations to share one database.
- **pconnect** - TRUE/FALSE (boolean) - Whether to use a persistent connection.
- **db_debug** - TRUE/FALSE (boolean) - Whether database errors should be displayed.
- **active_r** - TRUE/FALSE (boolean) - Whether to load the [Active Record Class](#). If you are not using the active record class you can have it omitted when the database classes are initialized in order to utilize less resources.

Note: that some CodeIgniter classes such as Sessions require Active Records be enabled to access certain functionality.

- **port** - The database port number. Currently only used with the Postgre driver.

Note: Depending on what database platform you are using (MySQL, Postgre, etc.) not all values will be needed. For example, when using SQLite you will not need to supply a username or password, and the database name will be the path to your database file. The information above assumes you are using MySQL.

Previous Topic: [Quick Start: Usage Examples](#) · [Top of Page](#) · [User Guide Home](#) · Next Topic: [Connecting to your Database](#)

CodeIgniter · Copyright © 2007 · Ellislab, Inc.

Queries

`$this->db->query();`

To submit a query, use the following function:

```
$this->db->query('YOUR QUERY HERE');
```

The **query()** function returns a database result **object** when "read" type queries are run, which you can use to [show your results](#). When "write" type queries are run it simply returns TRUE or FALSE depending on success or failure. When retrieving data you will typically assign the query to your own variable, like this:

```
$query = $this->db->query('YOUR QUERY HERE');
```

`$this->db->simple_query();`

This is a simplified version of the **\$this->db->query()** function. It ONLY returns TRUE/FALSE on success or failure. It DOES NOT return a database result set, nor does it set the query timer, or compile bind data, or store your query for debugging. It simply lets you submit a query. Most users will rarely use this function.

Escaping Queries

It's a very good security practice to escape your data before submitting it into your database. CodeIgniter has two functions that help you do this:

1. **\$this->db->escape()** This function determines the data type so that it can escape only string data. It also automatically adds single quotes around the data so you don't have to:

```
$sql = "INSERT INTO table (title) VALUES('$this->db->escape($title)')";
```

2. **\$this->db->escape_str()** This function escapes the data passed to it,

regardless of type. Most of the time you'll use the above function rather than this one. Use the function like this:

```
$sql = "INSERT INTO table (title) VALUES('".$this->db->escape_str($title)."'");
```

Query Bindings

Bindings enable you to simplify your query syntax by letting the system put the queries together for you. Consider the following example:

```
$sql = "SELECT * FROM some_table WHERE id = ? AND status = ? AND author = ?";  
$this->db->query($sql, array(3, 'live', 'Rick'));
```

The question marks in the query are automatically replaced with the values in the array in the second parameter of the query function.

The secondary benefit of using binds is that the values are automatically escaped, producing safer queries. You don't have to remember to manually escape data; the engine does it automatically for you.

Previous Topic: [Connecting to your Database](#) · [Top of Page](#) · [User Guide Home](#) · Next Topic: [Query Results](#)

[CodeIgniter](#) · Copyright © 2007 · [Ellislab, Inc.](#)

Generating Query Results

There are several ways to generate query results:

result()

This function returns the query result as an array of **objects**, or **an empty array** on failure. Typically you'll use this in a foreach loop, like this:

```
$query = $this->db->query("YOUR QUERY");

foreach ($query->result() as $row)
{
    echo $row->title;
    echo $row->name;
    echo $row->body;
}
```

The above **function** is an alias of **result_object()**.

If you run queries that might **not** produce a result, you are encouraged to test the result first:

```
$query = $this->db->query("YOUR QUERY");

if ($query->num_rows() > 0)
{
    foreach ($query->result() as $row)
    {
        echo $row->title;
        echo $row->name;
        echo $row->body;
    }
}
```

result_array()

This function returns the query result as a pure array, or an empty array when no result is produced. Typically you'll use this in a foreach loop, like this:

```
$query = $this->db->query("YOUR QUERY");

foreach ($query->result_array() as $row)
{
```

```

echo $row['title'];
echo $row['name'];
echo $row['body'];
}

```

row()

This function returns a single result row. If your query has more than one row, it returns only the first row. The result is returned as an **object**. Here's a usage example:

```

$query = $this->db->query("YOUR QUERY");

if ($query->num_rows() > 0)
{
    $row = $query->row();

    echo $row->title;
    echo $row->name;
    echo $row->body;
}

```

If you want a specific row returned you can submit the row number as a digit in the first parameter:

```

$row = $query->row(5);

```

row_array()

Identical to the above **row()** function, except it returns an array. Example:

```

$query = $this->db->query("YOUR QUERY");

if ($query->num_rows() > 0)
{
    $row = $query->row_array();

    echo $row['title'];
    echo $row['name'];
    echo $row['body'];
}

```

If you want a specific row returned you can submit the row number as a digit in the first parameter:

```

$row = $query->row_array(5);

```

In addition, you can walk forward/backwards/first/last through your results using these variations:

```
$row = $query->first_row()
$row = $query->last_row()
$row = $query->next_row()
$row = $query->previous_row()
```

By default they return an object unless you put the word "array" in the parameter:

```
$row = $query->first_row('array')
$row = $query->last_row('array')
$row = $query->next_row('array')
$row = $query->previous_row('array')
```

Result Helper Functions

\$query->num_rows()

The number of rows returned by the query. Note: In this example, **\$query** is the variable that the query result object is assigned to:

```
$query = $this->db->query('SELECT * FROM my_table');
echo $query->num_rows();
```

\$query->num_fields()

The number of FIELDS (columns) returned by the query. Make sure to call the function using your query result object:

```
$query = $this->db->query('SELECT * FROM my_table');
echo $query->num_fields();
```

\$query->free_result()

It frees the memory associated with the result and deletes the result resource ID. Normally PHP frees its memory automatically at the end of script execution. However, if you are running a lot of queries in a particular script you might want to free the result after each query result has been generated in order to cut down on memory consumptions. Example:

```
$query = $this->db->query('SELECT title FROM my_table');  
  
foreach ($query->result() as $row)  
{  
    echo $row->title;  
}  
$query->free_result(); // The $query result object will no longer be available  
  
$query2 = $this->db->query('SELECT name FROM some_table');  
  
$row = $query2->row();  
echo $row->name;  
$query2->free_result(); // The $query2 result object will no longer be available
```

[Previous Topic: Queries](#) · [Top of Page](#) · [User Guide Home](#) · [Next Topic: Query Helper Functions](#)

[CodeIgniter](#) · Copyright © 2007 · [Ellislab, Inc.](#)

Query Helper Functions

`$this->db->insert_id()`

The insert ID number when performing database inserts.

`$this->db->affected_rows()`

Displays the number of affected rows, when doing "write" type queries (insert, update, etc.).

Note: In MySQL "DELETE FROM TABLE" returns 0 affected rows. The database class has a small hack that allows it to return the correct number of affected rows. By default this hack is enabled but it can be turned off in the database driver file.

`$this->db->count_all();`

Permits you to determine the number of rows in a particular table. Submit the table name in the first parameter. Example:

```
echo $this->db->count_all('my_table');  
  
// Produces an integer, like 25
```

`$this->db->platform()`

Outputs the database platform you are running (MySQL, MS SQL, Postgre, etc...):

```
echo $this->db->platform();
```

`$this->db->version()`

Outputs the database version you are running:

```
echo $this->db->version();
```

`$this->db->last_query();`

Returns the last query that was run (the query string, not the result). Example:

```
$str = $this->db->last_query();  
  
// Produces: SELECT * FROM sometable....
```

The following two functions help simplify the process of writing database INSERTs and UPDATES.

`$this->db->insert_string();`

This function simplifies the process of writing database inserts. It returns a correctly formatted SQL insert string. Example:

```
$data = array('name' => $name, 'email' => $email, 'url' => $url);  
  
$str = $this->db->insert_string('table_name', $data);
```

The first parameter is the table name, the second is an associative array with the data to be inserted. The above example produces:

```
INSERT INTO table_name (name, email, url) VALUES ('Rick', 'rick@your-site.com', 'www.your-site.com')
```

Note: Values are automatically escaped, producing safer queries.

`$this->db->update_string();`

This function simplifies the process of writing database updates. It returns a correctly formatted SQL update string. Example:

```
$data = array('name' => $name, 'email' => $email, 'url' => $url);  
  
$where = "author_id = 1 AND status = 'active'";  
  
$str = $this->db->update_string('table_name', $data, $where);
```

The first parameter is the table name, the second is an associative array with the data to be inserted, and the third parameter is the "where" clause. The above example produces:

```
UPDATE exp_weblog SET name = 'Rick', email = 'rick@your-site.com', url = 'www.your-site.com' WHERE author_id = 1 AND status = 'active'
```

Note: Values are automatically escaped, producing safer queries.

Previous Topic: [Query Results](#) · [Top of Page](#) · [User Guide Home](#) · Next Topic: [Active Record Pattern](#)

[CodeIgniter](#) · Copyright © 2007 · [Ellislab, Inc.](#)

Transactions

CodeIgniter's database abstraction allows you to use **transactions** with databases that support transaction-safe table types. In MySQL, you'll need to be running InnoDB or BDB table types rather than the more common MyISAM. Most other database platforms support transactions natively.

If you are not familiar with transactions we recommend you find a good online resource to learn about them for your particular database. The information below assumes you have a basic understanding of transactions.

CodeIgniter's Approach to Transactions

CodeIgniter utilizes an approach to transactions that is very similar to the process used by the popular database class ADODB. We've chosen that approach because it greatly simplifies the process of running transactions. In most cases all that is required are two lines of code.

Traditionally, transactions have required a fair amount of work to implement since they demand that you to keep track of your queries and determine whether to **commit** or **rollback** based on the success or failure of your queries. This is particularly cumbersome with nested queries. In contrast, we've implemented a smart transaction system that does all this for you automatically (you can also manage your transactions manually if you choose to, but there's really no benefit).

Running Transactions

To run your queries using transactions you will use the **`$this->db->trans_start()`** and **`$this->db->trans_complete()`** functions as follows:

```
$this->db->trans_start();  
$this->db->query('AN SQL QUERY...');  
$this->db->query('ANOTHER QUERY...');  
$this->db->query('AND YET ANOTHER QUERY...');  
$this->db->trans_complete();
```

You can run as many queries as you want between the start/complete functions and they will all be committed or rolled back based on success or failure of any given query.

Managing Errors

If you have error reporting enabled in your **config/database.php** file you'll see a standard error message if the commit was unsuccessful. If debugging is turned off, you can manage your own errors like this:

```
$this->db->trans_start();
$this->db->query('AN SQL QUERY...');
$this->db->query('ANOTHER QUERY...');
$this->db->trans_complete();

if ($this->db->trans_status() === FALSE)
{
    // generate an error... or use the log_message() function to log your error
}
```

Enabling Transactions

Transactions are enabled automatically the moment you use **`$this->db->trans_start()`**. If you would like to disable transactions you can do so using **`$this->db->trans_off()`**:

```
$this->db->trans_off()

$this->db->trans_start();
$this->db->query('AN SQL QUERY...');
$this->db->trans_complete();
```

When transactions are disabled, your queries will be auto-committed, just as they are when running queries without transactions.

Test Mode

You can optionally put the transaction system into "test mode", which will cause your queries to be rolled back -- even if the queries produce a valid result. To use test mode simply set the first parameter in the **`$this->db->trans_start()`** function to **`TRUE`**:

```
$this->db->trans_start(TRUE); // Query will be rolled back
$this->db->query('AN SQL QUERY...');
$this->db->trans_complete();
```

Running Transactions Manually

If you would like to run transactions manually you can do so as follows:

```
$this->db->trans_begin();

$this->db->query('AN SQL QUERY...');
$this->db->query('ANOTHER QUERY...');
$this->db->query('AND YET ANOTHER QUERY...');

if ($this->db->trans_status() === FALSE)
{
    $this->db->trans_rollback();
}
else
{
    $this->db->trans_commit();
}
```

Note: Make sure to use **`$this->db->trans_begin()`** when running manual transactions, **NOT** **`$this->db->trans_start()`**.

Previous Topic: [Field MetaData](#) · [Top of Page](#) · [User Guide Home](#) · Next Topic: [Table Metadata](#)

[CodeIgniter](#) · Copyright © 2007 · [Ellislab, Inc.](#)

Table Data

These functions let you fetch table information.

`$this->db->list_tables();`

Returns an array containing the names of all the tables in the database you are currently connected to. Example:

```
$tables = $this->db->list_tables();  
  
foreach ($tables as $table)  
{  
    echo $table;  
}
```

`$this->db->table_exists();`

Sometimes it's helpful to know whether a particular table exists before running an operation on it. Returns a boolean TRUE/FALSE. Usage example:

```
if ($this->db->table_exists('table_name'))  
{  
    // some code...  
}
```

Note: Replace *table_name* with the name of the table you are looking for.

Field Data

`$this->db->list_fields()`

Returns an array containing the field names. This query can be called two ways:

1. You can supply the table name and call it from the **`$this->db->`** object:

```
$fields = $this->db->list_fields('table_name')

foreach ($fields as $field)
{
    echo $field;
}
```

2. You can gather the field names associated with any query you run by calling the function from your query result object:

```
$query = $this->db->query('SELECT * FROM some_table')

foreach ($query->list_fields() as $field)
{
    echo $field;
}
```

`$this->db->field_exists()`

Sometimes it's helpful to know whether a particular field exists before performing an action. Returns a boolean TRUE/FALSE. Usage example:

```
if ($this->db->field_exists('field_name', 'table_name'))
{
    // some code...
}
```

Note: Replace *field_name* with the name of the column you are looking for, and replace *table_name* with the name of the table you are looking for.

`$this->db->field_data()`

Returns an array of objects containing field information.

Sometimes it's helpful to gather the field names or other metadata, like the column type, max length, etc.

Note: Not all databases provide meta-data.

Usage example:

```
$fields = $this->db->field_data('table_name')

foreach ($fields as $field)
{
    echo $field->name;
    echo $field->type;
    echo $field->max_length;
    echo $field->primary_key;
}
```

If you have run a query already you can use the result object instead of supplying the table name:

```
$query = $this->db->query("YOUR QUERY")
$fields = $query->field_data()
```

The following data is available from this function if supported by your database:

- name - column name
- max_length - maximum length of the column
- primary_key - 1 if the column is a primary key
- type - the type of the column

Previous Topic: [Table Data](#) · [Top of Page](#) · [User Guide Home](#) · Next Topic: [Custom Function Calls](#)

CodeIgniter · Copyright © 2007 · Ellislab, Inc.

Custom Function Calls

`$this->db->call_function();`

This function enables you to call PHP database functions that are not natively included in CodeIgniter, in a platform independent manner. For example, lets say you want to call the **mysql_get_client_info()** function, which is **not** natively supported by CodeIgniter. You could do so like this:

```
$this->db->call_function('get_client_info');
```

You must supply the name of the function, **without** the **mysql_** prefix, in the first parameter. The prefix is added automatically based on which database driver is currently being used. This permits you to run the same function on different database platforms. Obviously not all function calls are identical between platforms, so there are limits to how useful this function can be in terms of portability.

Any parameters needed by the function you are calling will be added to the second parameter.

```
$this->db->call_function('some_function', $param1, $param2, etc..);
```

Often, you will either need to supply a database connection ID or a database result ID. The connection ID can be accessed using:

```
$this->db->conn_id;
```

The result ID can be accessed from within your result object, like this:

```
$query = $this->db->query("SOME QUERY");  
  
$query->result_id;
```

Database Caching Class

The Database Caching Class permits you to cache your queries as text files for reduced database load.

Important: This class is initialized automatically by the database driver when caching is enabled. Do NOT load this class manually.

Also note: Not all query result functions are available when you use caching. Please read this page carefully.

Enabling Caching

Caching is enabled in three steps:

- Create a writable directory on your server where the cache files can be stored.
- Set the path to your cache folder in your **application/config/database.php** file.
- Enable the caching feature, either globally by setting the preference in your **application/config/database.php** file, or manually as described below.

Once enabled, caching will happen automatically whenever a page is loaded that contains database queries.

How Does Caching Work?

CodeIgniter's query caching system happens dynamically when your pages are viewed. When caching is enabled, the first time a web page is loaded, the query result object will be serialized and stored in a text file on your server. The next time the page is loaded the cache file will be used instead of accessing your database. Your database usage can effectively be reduced to zero for any pages that have been cached.

Only **read-type** (SELECT) queries can be cached, since these are the only type of queries that produce a result. **Write-type** (INSERT, UPDATE, etc.) queries, since they don't generate a result, will not be cached by the system.

Cache files DO NOT expire. Any queries that have been cached will remain cached until you delete them. The caching system permits you clear caches associated with individual pages, or you can delete the entire collection of cache files. Typically you'll to use the housekeeping functions described below to delete cache files after certain events take place, like when you've added new information to your database.

Will Caching Improve Your Site's Performance?

Getting a performance gain as a result of caching depends on many factors. If you have a highly optimized database under very little load, you probably won't see a

performance boost. If your database is under heavy use you probably will see an improved response, assuming your file-system is not overly taxed. Remember that caching simply changes how your information is retrieved, shifting it from being a database operation to a file-system one.

In some clustered server environments, for example, caching may be detrimental since file-system operations are so intense. On single servers in shared environments, caching will probably be beneficial. Unfortunately there is no single answer to the question of whether you should cache your database. It really depends on your situation.

How are Cache Files Stored?

CodeIgniter places the result of EACH query into its own cache file. Sets of cache files are further organized into sub-folders corresponding to your controller functions. To be precise, the sub-folders are named identically to the first two segments of your URI (the controller class name and function name).

For example, let's say you have a controller called **blog** with a function called **comments** that contains three queries. The caching system will create a cache folder called **blog+comments**, into which it will write three cache files.

If you use dynamic queries that change based on information in your URI (when using pagination, for example), each instance of the query will produce its own cache file. It's possible, therefore, to end up with many times more cache files than you have queries.

Managing your Cache Files

Since cache files do not expire, you'll need to build deletion routines into your application. For example, let's say you have a blog that allows user commenting. Whenever a new comment is submitted you'll want to delete the cache files associated with the controller function that serves up your comments. You'll find two delete functions described below that help you clear data.

Not All Database Functions Work with Caching

Lastly, we need to point out that the result object that is cached is a simplified version of the full result object. For that reason, some of the query result functions are not available for use.

The following functions **ARE NOT** available when using a cached result object:

- num_fields()
- field_names()
- field_data()
- free_result()

Also, the two database resources (result_id and conn_id) are not available when caching, since result resources only pertain to run-time operations.

Function Reference

`$this->db->cache_on()` / `$this->db->cache_off()`

Manually enables/disables caching. This can be useful if you want to keep certain queries from being cached. Example:

```
// Turn caching on
$this->db->cache_on();
$query = $this->db->query("SELECT * FROM mytable");

// Turn caching off for this one query
$this->db->cache_off();
$query = $this->db->query("SELECT * FROM members WHERE member_id = '$current_user'");

// Turn caching back on
$this->db->cache_on();
$query = $this->db->query("SELECT * FROM another_table");
```

`$this->db->cache_delete()`

Deletes the cache files associated with a particular page. This is useful if you need to clear caching after you update your database.

The caching system saves your cache files to folders that correspond to the URI of the page you are viewing. For example, if you are viewing a page at **[www.your-site.com/index.php/blog/comments](#)**, the caching system will put all cache files associated with it in a folder called **blog+comments**. To delete those particular cache files you will use:

```
$this->db->cache_delete('blog', 'comments');
```

If you do not use any parameters the current URI will be used when determining what should be cleared.

`$this->db->cache_delete_all()`

Clears all existing cache files. Example:

```
$this->db->cache_delete_all();
```

Database Utility Class

The Database Utility Class contains functions that help you manage your database.

Table of Contents

- [Initializing the Utility Class](#)
- [Creating a Database](#)
- [Dropping a Database](#)
- [Listing your Databases](#)
- [Optimizing your Tables](#)
- [Repairing your Databases](#)
- [Optimizing your Database](#)
- [CSV Files from a Database Result](#)
- [XML Files from a Database Result](#)
- [Backing up your Database](#)

Initializing the Utility Class

Important: In order to initialize the Utility class, your database driver must already be running, since the utilities class relies on it.

Load the Utility Class as follows:

```
$this->load->dbutil()
```

Once initialized you will access the functions using the **`$this->dbutil`** object:

```
$this->dbutil->some_function()
```

`$this->dbutil->create_database('db_name')`

Permits you to create the database specified in the first parameter. Returns TRUE/FALSE based on success or failure:

```
if ($this->dbutil->create_database('my_db'))  
{  
    echo 'Database created!';  
}
```

```
}
```

`$this->dbutil->drop_database('db_name')`

Permits you to drop the database specified in the first parameter. Returns TRUE/FALSE based on success or failure:

```
if ($this->dbutil->drop_database('my_db'))
{
    echo 'Database deleted!';
}
```

`$this->dbutil->list_databases()`

Returns an array of database names:

```
$dbs = $this->dbutil->list_databases();

foreach($dbs as $db)
{
    echo $db;
}
```

`$this->dbutil->optimize_table('table_name');`

Note: This features is only available for MySQL/MySQLi databases.

Permits you to optimize a table using the table name specified in the first parameter. Returns TRUE/FALSE based on success or failure:

```
if ($this->dbutil->optimize_table('table_name'))
{
    echo 'Success!';
}
```

Note: Not all database platforms support table optimization.

`$this->dbutil->repair_table('table_name');`

Note: This features is only available for MySQL/MySQLi databases.

Permits you to repair a table using the table name specified in the first parameter. Returns TRUE/FALSE based on success or failure:

```
if ($this->dbutil->repair_table('table_name'))
{
    echo 'Success!';
}
```

Note: Not all database platforms support table repairs.

`$this->dbutil->optimize_database()`

Note: This features is only available for MySQL/MySQLi databases.

Permits you to optimize the database your DB class is currently connected to. Returns an array containing the DB status messages or FALSE on failure.

```
$result = $this->dbutil->optimize_database();

if ($result !== FALSE)
{
    print_r($result);
}
```

Note: Not all database platforms support table optimization.

`$this->dbutil->csv_from_result($db_result)`

Permits you to generate a CSV file from a query result. The first parameter of the function must contain the result object from your query. Example:

```
$this->load->dbutil();

$query = $this->db->query("SELECT * FROM mytable");

echo $this->dbutil->csv_from_result($query);
```

The second and third parameters allows you to set the delimiter and newline character. By default tabs are used as the delimiter and "\n" is used as a new line. Example:

```
$delimiter = ",";
$newline = "\r\n";

echo $this->dbutil->csv_from_result($query, $delimiter, $newline);
```

Important: This function will NOT write the CSV file for you. It simply creates the CSV layout. If you need to write the file use the [File Helper](#).

`$this->dbutil->xml_from_result($db_result)`

Permits you to generate an XML file from a query result. The first parameter expects a query result object, the second may contain an optional array of config parameters. Example:

```
$this->load->dbutil();

$query = $this->db->query("SELECT * FROM mytable");

$config = array (
    'root'    => 'root',
    'element' => 'element',
    'newline' => "\n",
    'tab'     => "\t"
);

echo $this->dbutil->xml_from_result($query, $config);
```

Important: This function will NOT write the XML file for you. It simply creates the XML layout. If you need to write the file use the [File Helper](#).

`$this->dbutil->backup()`

Permits you to backup your full database or individual tables. The backup data can be compressed in either Zip or Gzip format.

Note: This features is only available for MySQL/MySQLi databases.

Note: Due to the limited execution time and memory available to PHP, backing up very large databases may not be possible. If your database is very large you might need to backup directly from your SQL server via the command line, or have your server admin do it for you if you do not have root privileges.

Usage Example

```
// Load the DB utility class
$this->load->dbutil();

// Backup your entire database and assign it to a variable
$backup =& $this->dbutil->backup();

// Load the file helper and write the file to your server
$this->load->helper('file');
write_file('/path/to/mybackup.gz', $backup);

// Load the download helper and send the file to your desktop
$this->load->helper('download');
force_download('mybackup.gz', $backup);
```

Setting Backup Preferences

Backup preferences are set by submitting an array of values to the first parameter of the backup function. Example:

```

$prefs = array(
    'tables'      => array('table1', 'table2'), // Array of tables to backup.
    'ignore'      => array(),                  // List of tables to omit from the backup
    'format'      => 'txt',                    // gzip, zip, txt
    'filename'    => 'mybackup.sql',           // File name - NEEDED ONLY WITH ZIP FILES
    'add_drop'    => TRUE,                     // Whether to add DROP TABLE statements to backup file
    'add_insert'  => TRUE,                     // Whether to add INSERT data to backup file
    'newline'     => "\n"                     // Newline character used in backup file
);

$this->dbutil->backup($prefs);

```

Description of Backup Preferences

Preference	Default Value	Options	Description
tables	empty array	None	An array of tables you want backed up. If left blank all tables will be exported.
ignore	empty array	None	An array of tables you want the backup routine to ignore.
format	gzip	gzip, zip, txt	The file format of the export file.
filename	the current date/time	None	The name of the backed-up file. The name is needed only if you are using zip compression.
add_drop	TRUE	TRUE/FALSE	Whether to include DROP TABLE statements in your SQL export file.
add_insert	TRUE	TRUE/FALSE	Whether to include INSERT statements in your SQL export file.
newline	"\n"	"\n", "\r", "\r\n"	Type of newline to use in your SQL export file.

[Previous Topic: DB Caching Class](#) ·
 [Top of Page](#) ·
 [User Guide Home](#) ·
 Next Topic: [Email Class](#)

[CodeIgniter](#) ·
 Copyright © 2007 ·
 [Ellislab, Inc.](#)

Config Class

The Config class provides a means to retrieve configuration preferences. These preferences can come from the default config file (**application/config/config.php**) or from your own custom config files.

Note: This class is initialized automatically by the system so there is no need to do it manually.

Anatomy of a Config File

By default, CodeIgniter has a one primary config file, located at **application/config/config.php**. If you open the file using your text editor you'll see that config items are stored in an array called **\$config**.

You can add your own config items to this file, or if you prefer to keep your configuration items separate (assuming you even need config items), simply create your own file and save it in **config** folder.

Note: If you do create your own config files use the same format as the primary one, storing your items in an array called **\$config**. CodeIgniter will intelligently manage these files so there will be no conflict even though the array has the same name (assuming an array index is not named the same as another).

Loading a Config File

Note: CodeIgniter automatically loads the primary config file (**application/config/config.php**), so you will only need to load a config file if you have created your own.

There are two ways to load a config file:

1. Manual Loading

To load one of your custom config files you will use the following function within the [controller](#) that needs it:

```
$this->config->load('filename');
```

Where **filename** is the name of your config file, without the .php file extension.

If you need to load multiple config files normally they will be merged into one master config array. Name collisions can occur, however, if you have identically named array indexes in different config files. To avoid collisions you can set the second parameter to **TRUE** and each config file will be stored in an array index corresponding to the name of the config file. Example:

```
// Stored in an array with this prototype: $this->config['blog_settings']  
= $config  
$this->config->load('blog_settings', TRUE);
```

Please see the section entitled **Fetching Config Items** below to learn how to retrieve config items set this way.

The third parameter allows you to suppress errors in the event that a config file does not exist:

```
$this->config->load('blog_settings', FALSE, TRUE);
```

2. Auto-loading

If you find that you need a particular config file globally, you can have it loaded automatically by the system. To do this, open the **autoload.php** file, located at [application/config/autoload.php](#), and add your config file as indicated in the file.

Fetching Config Items

To retrieve an item from your config file, use the following function:


```
$this->config->item('item_name');
```

Where **item_name** is the \$config array index you want to retrieve. For example, to fetch your language choice you'll do this:

```
$lang = $this->config->item('language');
```

The function returns FALSE (boolean) if the item you are trying to fetch does not exist.

If you are using the second parameter of the **\$this->config->load** function in order to assign your config items to a specific index you can retrieve it by specifying the index name in the second parameter of the **\$this->config->item()** function. Example:

```
// Loads a config file named blog_settings.php and assigns it to an index
named "blog_settings"
$this->config->load('blog_settings', 'TRUE');

// Retrieve a config item named site_name contained within the blog_settings
array
$site_name = $this->config->item('site_name', 'blog_settings');

// An alternate way to specify the same item:
$blog_config = $this->config->item('blog_settings');
$site_name = $blog_config['site_name'];
```

Setting a Config Item

If you would like to dynamically set a config item or change an existing one, you can so using:

```
$this->config->set_item('item_name', 'item_value');
```

Where **item_name** is the \$config array index you want to change, and **item_value** is its value.

Helper Functions

The config class has the following helper functions:

`$this->config->site_url();`

This function retrieves the URL to your site, along with the "index" value you've specified in the config file.

`$this->config->system_url();`

This function retrieves the URL to your **system folder**.

Previous Topic: [Calendaring Class](#) · [Top of Page](#) · [User Guide Home](#) · Next Topic: [Database Class](#)

[CodeIgniter](#) · Copyright © 2007 · [Ellislab, Inc.](#)

Hooks - Extending the Framework Core

CodeIgniter's Hooks feature provides a means to tap into and modify the inner workings of the framework without hacking the core files. When CodeIgniter runs it follows a specific execution process, diagramed in the [Application Flow](#) page. There may be instances, however, where you'd like to cause some action to take place at a particular stage in the execution process. For example, you might want to run a script right before your controllers get loaded, or right after, or you might want to trigger one of your own scripts in some other location.

Enabling Hooks

The hooks feature can be globally enabled/disabled by setting the following item in the **application/config/config.php** file:

```
$config['enable_hooks'] = TRUE;
```

Defining a Hook

Hooks are defined in **application/config/hooks.php** file. Each hook is specified as an array with this prototype:

```
$hook['pre_controller'] = array(
    'class' => 'MyClass',
    'function' => 'Myfunction',
    'filename' => 'Myclass.php',
    'filepath' => 'hooks',
    'params' => array('beer', 'wine', 'snacks')
);
```

Notes:

The array index correlates to the name of the particular hook point you want to use. In the above example the hook point is **pre_controller**. A list of hook points is found below. The following items should be defined in your associative hook array:

- **class** The name of the class you wish to invoke. If you prefer to use a procedural function instead of a class, leave this item blank.
- **function** The function name you wish to call.
- **filename** The file name containing your class/function.
- **filepath** The name of the directory containing your script. Note: Your script must be located in a directory INSIDE your **application** folder, so the file path is relative to that folder. For example, if your script is located in **application/hooks**, you will

simply use **hooks** as your filepath. If your script is located in **application/hooks/utilities** you will use **hooks/utilities** as your filepath. No trailing slash.

- **params** Any parameters you wish to pass to your script. This item is optional.

Multiple Calls to the Same Hook

If want to use the same hook point with more then one script, simply make your array declaration multi-dimensional, like this:

```
$hook['pre_controller'][] = array(
    'class'    => 'MyClass',
    'function' => 'Myfunction',
    'filename' => 'Myclass.php',
    'filepath' => 'hooks',
    'params'   => array('beer', 'wine', 'snacks')
);

$hook['pre_controller'][] = array(
    'class'    => 'MyOtherClass',
    'function' => 'MyOtherfunction',
    'filename' => 'Myotherclass.php',
    'filepath' => 'hooks',
    'params'   => array('red', 'yellow', 'blue')
);
```

Notice the brackets after each array index:

```
$hook['pre_controller'][]
```

This permits you to the same hook point with multiple scripts. The order you define your array will be the execution order.

Hook Points

The following is a list of available hook points.

- **pre_system**
Called very early during system execution. Only the benchmark and hooks class have been loaded at this point. No routing or other processes have happened.
- **pre_controller**
Called immediately prior to any of your controllers being called. All base classes, routing, and security checks have been done.
- **post_controller_constructor**
Called immediately after your controller is instantiated, but prior to any method calls happening.
- **post_controller**
Called immediately after your controller is fully executed.
- **display_override**

Overrides the **_display()** function, used to send the finalized page to the web browser at the end of system execution. This permits you to use your own display methodology. Note that the finalized data will be available by calling **\$this->output->get_output()**

- **cache_override**

Enables you to call your own function instead of the **_display_cache()** function in the output class. This permits you to use your own cache display mechanism.

- **scaffolding_override**

Permits a scaffolding request to trigger your own script instead.

- **post_system**

Called after the final rendered page is sent to the browser, at the end of system execution after the finalized data is sent to the browser.

Previous Topic: [Creating Core Classes](#) · [Top of Page](#) · [User Guide Home](#) · Next Topic: [Auto-loading Resources](#)

[CodeIgniter](#) · Copyright © 2007 · [Ellislab, Inc.](#)

Managing your Applications

By default it is assumed that you only intend to use CodeIgniter to manage one application, which you will build in your **system/application/** directory. It is possible, however, to have multiple sets of applications that share a single CodeIgniter installation, or even to rename or relocate your **application** folder.

Renaming the Application Folder

If you would like to rename your **application** folder you may do so as long as you open your main **index.php** file and set its name using the **\$application_folder** variable:

```
$application_folder = "application";
```

Relocating your Application Folder

It is possible to move your **application** folder to a different location on your server than your **system** folder. To do so open your main **index.php** and set a *full server path* in the **\$application_folder** variable.

```
$application_folder = "/Path/to/your/application";
```

Running Multiple Applications with one CodeIgniter Installation

If you would like to share a common CodeIgniter installation to manage several different applications simply put all of the directories located inside your **application** folder into their own sub-folder.

For example, let's say you want to create two applications, "foo" and "bar". You will structure your application folder like this:

```
system/application/foo/
system/application/foo/config/
system/application/foo/controllers/
system/application/foo/errors/
```

```
system/application/foo/libraries/  
system/application/foo/models/  
system/application/foo/views/  
system/application/bar/  
system/application/bar/config/  
system/application/bar/controllers/  
system/application/bar/errors/  
system/application/bar/libraries/  
system/application/bar/models/  
system/application/bar/views/
```

To select a particular application for use requires that you open your main **index.php** file and set the **\$application_folder** variable. For example, to select the "foo" application for use you would do this:

```
$application_folder = "application/foo";
```

Note: Each of your applications will need its own **index.php** file which calls the desired application. The index.php file can be named anything you want.

[Previous Topic: Profiling Your Application](#) · [Top of Page](#) · [User Guide Home](#) · [Next Topic: Alternative PHP Syntax](#)

[CodeIgniter](#) · Copyright © 2007 · [Ellislab, Inc.](#)

Security

This page describes some "best practices" regarding web security, and details CodeIgniter's internal security features.

URI Security

CodeIgniter is fairly restrictive regarding which characters it allows in your URI strings in order to help minimize the possibility that malicious data can be passed to your application. URIs may only contain the following:

- Alpha-numeric text
- Tilde: ~
- Period: .
- Colon: :
- Underscore: _
- Dash: -

GET, POST, and COOKIE Data

GET data is simply disallowed by CodeIgniter since the system utilizes URI segments rather than traditional URL query strings (unless you have the query string option enabled in your config file). The global GET array is **unset** by the Input class during system initialization.

Register_globals

During system initialization all global variables are unset, except those found in the \$_POST and \$_COOKIE arrays. The unsetting routine is effectively the same as register_globals = off.

`magic_quotes_runtime`

The `magic_quotes_runtime` directive is turned off during system initialization so that you don't have to remove slashes when retrieving data from your database.

Best Practices

Before accepting any data into your application, whether it be POST data from a form submission, COOKIE data, URI data, XML-RPC data, or even data from the SERVER array, you are encouraged to practice this three step approach:

1. Filter the data as if it were tainted.
2. Validate the data to ensure it conforms to the correct type, length, size, etc. (sometimes this step can replace step one)
3. Escape the data before submitting it into your database.

CodeIgniter provides the following functions to assist in this process:

. XSS Filtering

CodeIgniter comes with a Cross Site Scripting filter. This filter looks for commonly used techniques to embed malicious Javascript into your data, or other types of code that attempt to hijack cookies or do other malicious things. The XSS Filter is described [here](#).

. Validate the data

CodeIgniter has a [Validation Class](#) that assists you in validating, filtering, and prepping your data.

. Escape all data before database insertion

Never insert information into your database without escaping it. Please see the section that discusses [queries](#) for more information.

Previous Topic: [Alternative PHP](#) · [Top of Page](#) · [User Guide Home](#) · Next Topic: [Benchmarking Class](#)

[CodeIgniter](#) · Copyright © 2007 · [Ellislab, Inc.](#)

Plugins

Plugins work almost identically to [Helpers](#). The main difference is that a plugin usually provides a single function, whereas a Helper is usually a collection of functions. Helpers are also considered a part of the core system; plugins are intended to be created and shared by our community.

Plugins should be saved to your **system/plugins** directory or you can create a folder called **plugins** inside your **application** folder and store them there. CodeIgniter will look first in your **system/application/plugins** directory. If the directory does not exist or the specified plugin is not located there CI will instead look in your global **system/plugins** folder.

Loading a Plugin

Loading a plugin file is quite simple using the following function:

```
$this->load->plugin('name');
```

Where **name** is the file name of the plugin, without the .php file extension or the "plugin" part.

For example, to load the **Captcha** plugin, which is named **captcha_pi.php**, you will do this:

```
$this->load->plugin('captcha');
```

A plugin can be loaded anywhere within your [controller](#) functions (or even within your [View files](#), although that's not a good practice), as long as you load it before you use it. You can load your plugins in your controller constructor so that they become available automatically in any function, or you can load a plugin in a specific function that needs it.

Note: The Plugin loading function above does not return a value, so don't try to assign it to a variable. Just use it as shown.

Loading Multiple Plugins

If you need to load more than one plugin you can specify them in an array, like this:

```
$this->load->plugin( array('plugin1', 'plugin2', 'plugin3') );
```

Auto-loading Plugins

If you find that you need a particular plugin globally throughout your application, you can tell CodeIgniter to auto-load it during system initialization. This is done by opening the **application/config/autoload.php** file and adding the plugin to the autoload array.

Using a Plugin

Once you've loaded the Plugin, you'll call it the way you would a standard PHP function.

Previous Topic: [Helpers](#) · [Top of Page](#) · [User Guide Home](#) · Next Topic: [Using Libraries](#)

[CodeIgniter](#) · Copyright © 2007 · [Ellislab, Inc.](#)

Benchmarking Class

CodeIgniter has a Benchmarking class that is always active, enabling the time difference between any two marked points to be calculated.

Note: This class is initialized automatically by the system so there is no need to do it manually.

In addition, the benchmark is always started the moment the framework is invoked, and ended by the output class right before sending the final view to the browser, enabling a very accurate timing of the entire system execution to be shown.

Table of Contents

- [Using the Benchmark Class](#)
- [Profiling Your Benchmark Points](#)
- [Displaying Total Execution Time](#)
- [Displaying Memory Consumption](#)

Using the Benchmark Class

The Benchmark class can be used within your [controllers](#), [views](#), or your [Models](#). The process for usage is this:

1. Mark a start point
2. Mark an end point
3. Run the "elapsed time" function to view the results

Here's an example using real code:

```
$this->benchmark->mark('code_start');  
  
// Some code happens here
```

```
$this->benchmark->mark('code_end');

echo $this->benchmark->elapsed_time('code_start', 'code_end');
```

Note: The words "code_start" and "code_end" are arbitrary. They are simply words used to set two markers. You can use any words you want, and you can set multiple sets of markers. Consider this example:

```
$this->benchmark->mark('dog');

// Some code happens here

$this->benchmark->mark('cat');

// More code happens here

$this->benchmark->mark('bird');

echo $this->benchmark->elapsed_time('dog', 'cat');
echo $this->benchmark->elapsed_time('cat', 'bird');
echo $this->benchmark->elapsed_time('dog', 'bird');
```

Profiling Your Benchmark Points

If you want your benchmark data to be available to the [Profiler](#) all of your marked points must be set up in pairs, and each mark point name must end with **_start** and **_end**. Each pair of points must otherwise be named identically. Example:

```
$this->benchmark->mark('my_mark_start');

// Some code happens here...

$this->benchmark->mark('my_mark_end');

$this->benchmark->mark('another_mark_start');

// Some more code happens here...

$this->benchmark->mark('another_mark_end');
```

Please read the [Profiler page](#) for more information.

Displaying Total Execution Time

If you would like to display the total elapsed time from the moment CodeIgniter starts to the moment the final output is sent to the browser, simply place this in one of your view templates:

```
<?=$this->benchmark->elapsed_time();?>
```

You'll notice that it's the same function used in the examples above to calculate the time between two point, except you are **not** using any parameters. When the parameters are absent, CodeIgniter does not stop the benchmark until right before the final output is sent to the browser. It doesn't matter where you use the function call, the timer will continue to run until the very end.

An alternate way to show your elapsed time in your view files is to use this pseudo-variable, if you prefer not to use the pure PHP:

```
{elapsed_time}
```

Note: If you want to benchmark anything within your controller functions you must set your own start/end points.

Displaying Memory Consumption

If your PHP installation is configured with `--enable-memory-limit`, you can display the amount of memory consumed by the entire system using the following code in one of your view file:

```
<?=$this->benchmark->memory_usage();?>
```

Note: This function can only be used in your view files. The consumption will reflect the total memory used by the entire app.

An alternate way to show your memory usage in your view files is to use this pseudo-variable, if you prefer not to use the pure PHP:

```
{memory_usage}
```

Previous Topic: [Security](#) · [Top of Page](#) · [User Guide Home](#) · Next Topic: [Calendaring Class](#)

[CodeIgniter](#) · Copyright © 2007 · [Ellislab, Inc.](#)

CodeIgniter User Guide Version 1.5.3

[Search User Guide](#)

Session Class

The Session class permits you maintain a user's "state" and track their activity while they browse your site. The Session class stores session information for each user as serialized (and optionally encrypted) data in a cookie. It can also store the session data in a database table for added security, as this permits the session ID in the user's cookie to be matched against the stored session ID. By default only the cookie is saved. If you choose to use the database option you'll need to create the session table as indicated below.

Note: The Session class does **not** utilize native PHP sessions. It generates its own session data, offering more flexibility for developers.

Initializing a Session

Sessions will typically run globally with each page load, so the session class must either be [initialized](#) in your [controller](#) constructors, or it can be [auto-loaded](#) by the system. For the most part the session class will run unattended in the background, so simply initializing the class will cause it to read, create, and update sessions.

To initialize the Session class manually in your controller constructor, use the **`$this->load->library`** function:

```
$this->load->library('session');
```

Once loaded, the Sessions library object will be available using:

\$this->session

How do Sessions work?

When a page is loaded, the session class will check to see if valid session data exists in the user's session cookie. If sessions data does **not** exist (or if it has expired) a new session will be created and saved in the cookie. If a session does exist, its information will be updated and the cookie will be updated. With each update, the session_id will be regenerated.

It's important for you to understand that once initialized, the Session class runs automatically. There is nothing you need to do to cause the above behavior to happen. You can, as you'll see below, work with session data or even add your own data to a user's session, but the process of reading, writing, and updating a session is automatic.

What is Session Data?

A *session*, as far as CodeIgniter is concerned, is simply an array containing the following information:

- The user's unique Session ID (this is a statistically random string with very strong entropy, hashed with MD5 for portability, and regenerated (by default) every five minutes)
- The user's IP Address
- The user's User Agent data (the first 50 characters of the browser data string)
- The "last activity" and "last visit" time stamps.

The above data is stored in a cookie as a serialized array with this prototype:

```
[array]
(
    'session_id'    => random hash,
    'ip_address'    => 'string - user IP address',
    'user_agent'    => 'string - user agent data',
    'last_activity' => timestamp,
    'last_visit'    => timestamp
)
```

If you have the encryption option enabled, the serialized array will be encrypted before being stored in the cookie, making the data highly secure and impervious to being read or altered by someone. More info regarding encryption can be [found here](#), although the Session class will take care of initializing and encrypting the data automatically.

Note: Session cookies are only updated every five minutes by default to reduce processor load. If you repeatedly reload a page you'll notice that the "last activity" time only updates if five minutes or more has passed since the last time the cookie was written. This time is configurable by changing the `$config['time_to_update']` line in your `system/config/config.php` file.

Retrieving Session Data

Any piece of information from the session array is available using the following function:

```
$this->session->userdata('item');
```

Where **item** is the array index corresponding to the item you wish to fetch. For example, to fetch the session ID you will do this:

```
$session_id = $this->session->userdata('session_id');
```

Note: The function returns FALSE (boolean) if the item you are trying to access does not exist.

Adding Custom Session Data

A useful aspect of the session array is that you can add your own data to it and it will be stored in the user's cookie. Why would you want to do this? Here's one example:

Let's say a particular user logs into your site. Once authenticated, you could add their username and email address to the session cookie, making that data globally available to you without having to

run a database query when you need it.

To add your data to the session array involves passing an array containing your new data to this function:

```
$this->session->set_userdata($array);
```

Where **\$array** is an associative array containing your new data. Here's an example:

```
$newdata = array(
    'username' => 'johndoe',
    'email'    => 'johndoe@some-site.com',
    'logged_in' => TRUE
);

$this->session->set_userdata($newdata);
```

If you want to add userdata one value at a time, `set_userdata()` also supports this syntax.

```
$this->session->set_userdata('some_name', 'some_value');
```

Note: Cookies can only hold 4KB of data, so be careful not to exceed the capacity. The encryption process in particular produces a longer data string than the original so keep careful track of how much data you are storing.

Removing Session Data

Just as `set_userdata()` can be used to add information into a session, `unset_userdata()` can be used to remove it, by passing the session key. For example, if you wanted to remove 'some_name' from your session information:

```
$this->session->unset_userdata('some_name');
```

This function can also be passed an associative array of items to

unset.

```
$array_items = array('username' => "", 'email' => "");  
$this->session->unset_userdata($array_items);
```

Flashdata

CodeIgniter supports "flashdata", or session data that will only be available for the next server request, and are then automatically cleared. These can be very useful, and are typically used for informational or status messages (for example: "record 2 deleted").

Note: Flash variables are prefaced with "flash_" so avoid this prefix in your own session names.

To add flashdata:

```
$this->session->set_flashdata('item', 'value');
```

You can also pass an array to set_flashdata(), in the same manner as set_userdata().

To read a flashdata variable:

```
$this->session->flashdata('item');
```

If you find that you need to preserve a flashdata variable through an additional request, you can do so using the keep_flashdata() function.

```
$this->session->keep_flashdata('item');
```

Saving Session Data to a Database

While the session data array stored in the user's cookie contains a Session ID, unless you store session data in a database there is no way to validate it. For some applications that require little or no

security, session ID validation may not be needed, but if your application requires security, validation is mandatory.

When session data is available in a database, every time a valid session is found in the user's cookie, a database query is performed to match it. If the session ID does not match, the session is destroyed. Session IDs can never be updated, they can only be generated when a new session is created.

In order to store sessions, you must first create a database table for this purpose. Here is the basic prototype (for MySQL) required by the session class:

Note: By default the table is called **ci_sessions**, but you can name it anything you want as long as you update the **application/config/config.php** file so that it contains the name you have chosen. Once you have created your database table you can enable the database option in your config.php file as follows:

```
$config['sess_use_database'] = TRUE;
```

Once enabled, the Session class will store session data in the DB.

Make sure you've specified the table name in your config file as well:

```
$config['sess_table_name'] = 'ci_sessions';
```

Note: The Session class has built-in garbage collection which clears out expired sessions so you do not need to write your own routine to do it.

Destroying a Session

To clear the current session:

```
$this->session->sess_destroy();
```

Session Preferences

You'll find the following Session related preferences in your **application/config/config.php** file:

Preference	Default	Options	Description
sess_cookie_name	ci_session	None	The name you would the session cookie saved as.
sess_expiration	7200	None	The number of seconds you would like the session to last. The default value is 2 hours (7200 seconds). If you would like a non-expiring session set the value to zero: 0
sess_encrypt_cookie	FALSE	TRUE/FALSE (boolean)	Whether to encrypt the session data.
sess_use_database	FALSE	TRUE/FALSE (boolean)	Whether to save the session data to a database. You must create the table before enabling this option.
sess_table_name	ci_sessions	Any valid SQL table name	The name of the session database table.
sess_match_ip	FALSE	TRUE/FALSE (boolean)	Whether to match the user's IP address when reading the session data. Note that some ISPs dynamically changes the IP, so if you want a non-expiring session you will likely set this to FALSE.

sess_match_useragent	TRUE	TRUE/FALSE (boolean)	Whether to match the User Agent when reading the session data.
-----------------------------	------	-------------------------	--

Previous Topic: [Pagination Class](#) · [Top of Page](#) · [User Guide Home](#) · Next Topic: [Trackback Class](#)

[CodeIgniter](#) · Copyright © 2007 · [Ellislab, Inc.](#)

Server Requirements

- [PHP](#) version 4.3.2 or newer
- A Database. Supported databases are MySQL, MySQLi, MS SQL, Postgre, Oracle, SQLite, and ODBC

[Top of Page](#) · [User Guide Home](#) · Next Topic: [License Agreement](#)

[CodeIgniter](#) · Copyright © 2007 · [Ellislab, Inc.](#)

Change Log

Version 1.5.5

Release Date: -- still in development

- Added Flashdata variables, session_id regeneration and configurable session update times to the [Session class](#).
- Added the ability to [auto-load Models](#)
- Added `$this->DB->save_queries` variable to DB driver, enabling queries to get saved or no. Previously they were always saved.
- Added **`$assign_to_controller`** variable in the main **`index.php`** file. Anything that this variable contains will be passed automatically to a controller constructor when initialized.
- Reorganized the URI and Routes classes for better clarity.
- Javascript Calendar plugin now uses the months and days from the calendar language file, instead of hard-coded values, internationalizing it.
- Removed "rand()" as a listed option from orderby in the [Active Record](#), as it was MySQL only.
- Added 'random' as an **`order_by()`** option in [Active Record](#).
- Added **`where_in()`**, **`where_in_or()`**, **`where_not_in()`**, and **`where_not_in_or()`** to [Active Record](#).
- Added support for **`limit()`** into **`update()`** and **`delete()`** statements in [Active Record](#).
- Added the ability to pass an array of tables to the **`delete()`** statement in [Active Record](#).
- Added titles to all user manual pages.
- Added a check for NULL fields in the MySQL database backup utility.
- Documented the **`timezones()`** function in the [Date Helper](#).
- Documented `unset_userdata` in the [Session class](#).

- Changed the behaviour of custom callbacks so that they no longer trigger the "required" rule.
- Added a few additional mime type variations for CSV.
- Added **strip_quotes()** function to [string helper](#).
- Added **reduce_multiples()** function to [string helper](#).
- Added **quotes_to_entities()** function to [string helper](#).
- Added **form_reset()** function to [form helper](#).
- Added **count_all_results()** function to [Active Record](#).
- Added a language entry for valid_ip validation error.
- Added a third parameter to Active Record's **like()** clause to control where the wildcard goes.
- Moved the safe mode and auth checks for the Email library into the constructor.
- Changed the behaviour of variables submitted to the where() clause with no values to auto set "IS NULL"
- Fixed a bug in **highlight_phrase()** that caused an error with slashes.
- Fixed a bug: \$field_names[] vs \$Ffield_names[] in postgre and sqlite drivers
- Fixed a bug in **word_wrap()** of the Text Helper that incorrectly referenced an object.
- Fixed a bug in the [Email](#) library where some timezones were calculated incorrectly.
- Fixed a bug in [Validation](#) where **valid_ip()** wasn't called properly.
- Fixed a bug in the Session library where user agent matching would fail on user agents ending with a space.
- Fixed a bug in database driver where num_rows property wasn't getting updated.
- Fixed a bug in captcha calling an invalid PHP function.
- Fixed a bug in **_html_entity_decode_callback()** when 'global_xss_filtering' is enabled.
- Fixed a bug in the cookie helper "set_cookie" function. It was not honoring the config settings.
- Fixed a bug that was making validation callbacks required even when not set as such.

- Fixed an example of comma-separated emails in the email library documentation.
- Fixed an example in the Calendar library for Showing Next/Previous Month Links.
- Fixed a typo in the database language file.
- Fixed a typo in the image language file "suppor" to "support".
- Fixed an example for XML RPC.
- Fixed an example of **accept_charset()** in the [User Agent Library](#).
- Fixed a missing ">" in the smiley helper.
- Fixed a typo in the docblock comments that had CodeIgniter spelled CodeIgnitor.
- Fixed a typo in the [String Helper](#) (uniquid changed to unqid)
- Fixed a typo in the DocBlock comment for unset_userdata() in Session.
- Fixed a typo in the table library docs.
- Moved part of the userguide menu javascript to an external file.
- Deprecated from Active Record; **getwhere()** for **get_where()**; **groupby()** for **group_by()**; **orderby()** for **order_by**; **orwhere()** for **or_where()**; and **orlike()** for **or_like()**.

Version 1.5.4

Release Date: July 12, 2007

- Added [custom Language files](#) to the [autoload](#) options.
- Added stripslashes() to the _clean_input_data() function in the [Input class](#) when magic quotes is on so that data will always be un-slashed within the framework.
- Added array to string into the [profiler](#).
- Added some additional mime types in application/config/mimes.php.
- Added filename_security() method to [Input library](#).
- Added some additional arguments to the [Inflection helper](#) singular() to compensate for words ending in "s". Also added a force parameter to pluralize().
- Added \$config['charset'] to the config file. Default value is 'UTF-8',

used in some string handling functions.

- Fixed MSSQL insert_id().
- Fixed a logic error in the DB trans_status() function. It was incorrectly returning TRUE on failure and FALSE on success.
- Fixed a bug that was allowing multiple load attempts on extended classes.
- Fixed a bug in the bootstrap file that was incorrectly attempting to discern the full server path even when it was explicitly set by the user.
- Fixed a bug in the escape_str() function in the MySQL driver.
- Fixed a typo in the [Calendar library](#)
- Fixed a typo in rpcs.php library
- Fixed a bug in the [Zip library](#), providing PC Zip file compatibility with Mac OS X
- Fixed a bug in router that was ignoring the scaffolding route for optimization
- Fixed an IP validation bug.
- Fixed a bug in display of POST keys in the [Profiler](#) output
- Fixed a bug in display of queries with characters that would be interpreted as HTML in the [Profiler](#) output
- Fixed a bug in display of Email class print debugger with characters that would be interpreted as HTML in the debugging output
- Fixed a bug in the Content-Transfer-Encoding of HTML emails with the quoted-printable MIME type
- Fixed a bug where one could unset certain PHP superglobals by setting them via GET or POST data
- Fixed an undefined function error in the insert_id() function of the PostgreSQL driver
- Fixed various doc typos.
- Documented two functions from the [String helper](#) that were missing from the user guide: trim_slashes() and reduce_double_slashes().
- Docs now validate to XHTML 1 transitional
- Updated the XSS Filtering to take into account the IE expression() ability and improved certain deletions to prevent possible exploits
- Modified the Router so that when Query Strings are Enabled, the

controller trigger and function trigger values are sanitized for filename include security.

- Modified the `is_image()` method in the Upload library to take into account Windows IE 6/7 eccentricities when dealing with MIMEs
- Modified XSS Cleaning routine to be more performance friendly and compatible with PHP 5.2's new PCRE backtrack and recursion limits.
- Modified the [URL Helper](#) to type cast the \$title as a string in case a numeric value is supplied
- Modified Form Helper `form_dropdown()` to type cast the keys and values of the options array as strings, allowing numeric values to be properly set as 'selected'
- Deprecated the use of `is_numeric()` in various places since it allows periods. Due to compatibility problems with `ctype_digit()`, making it unreliable in some installations, the following regular expression was used instead: `preg_match("/^[^0-9]/", $n)`
- Deprecated: APPVER has been deprecated and replaced with CI_VERSION for clarity.

Version 1.5.3

Release Date: April 15, 2007

- Added array to string into the profiler
- Code Igniter references updated to CodeIgniter
- pMachine references updated to EllisLab
- Fixed a bug in the repeater function of [string helper](#).
- Fixed a bug in ODBC driver
- Fixed a bug in `result_array()` that was returning an empty array when no result is produced.
- Fixed a bug in the redirect function of the [url helper](#).
- Fixed an undefined variable in Loader
- Fixed a version bug in the Postgre driver
- Fixed a bug in the textarea function of the form helper for use with strings
- Fixed doc typos.

Version 1.5.2

Release Date: February 13, 2007

- Added [subversion information](#) to the [downloads](#) page.
- Added support for captions in the [Table Library](#)
- Fixed a bug in the [download_helper](#) that was causing Internet Explorer to load rather than download
- Fixed a bug in the Active Record Join function that was not taking table prefixes into consideration.
- Removed unescaped variables in error messages of Input and Router classes
- Fixed a bug in the Loader that was causing errors on Libraries loaded twice. A debug message is now silently made in the log.
- Fixed a bug in the [form helper](#) that gave textarea a value attribute
- Fixed a bug in the [Image Library](#) that was ignoring resizing the same size image
- Fixed some doc typos.

Version 1.5.1

Release Date: November 23, 2006

- Added support for submitting arrays of libraries in the `$this->load->library` function.
- Added support for naming custom library files in lower or uppercase.
- Fixed a bug related to output buffering.
- Fixed a bug in the active record class that was not resetting query data after a completed query.
- Fixed a bug that was suppressing errors in controllers.
- Fixed a problem that can cause a loop to occur when the config file is missing.
- Fixed a bug that occurred when multiple models were loaded with the third parameter set to TRUE.
- Fixed an oversight that was not unsetting globals properly in the input sanitize function.

- Fixed some bugs in the Oracle DB driver.
- Fixed an incorrectly named variable in the MySQLi result driver.
- Fixed some doc typos.

Version 1.5.0.1

Release Date: October 31, 2006

- Fixed a problem in which duplicate attempts to load helpers and classes were not being stopped.
- Fixed a bug in the word_wrap() helper function.
- Fixed an invalid color Hex number in the Profiler class.
- Fixed a corrupted image in the user guide.

Version 1.5.0

Release Date: October 30, 2006

- Added [DB utility class](#), permitting DB backups, CVS or XML files from DB results, and various other functions.
- Added [Database Caching Class](#).
- Added [transaction support](#) to the database classes.
- Added [Profiler Class](#) which generates a report of Benchmark execution times, queries, and POST data at the bottom of your pages.
- Added [User Agent Library](#) which allows browsers, robots, and mobile devices to be identified.
- Added [HTML Table Class](#) , enabling tables to be generated from arrays or database results.
- Added [Zip Encoding Library](#).
- Added [FTP Library](#).
- Added the ability to [extend libraries](#) and [extend core classes](#), in addition to being able to replace them.
- Added support for storing [models within sub-folders](#).
- Added [Download Helper](#).

- Added [simple_query\(\)](#) function to the database classes
- Added [standard_date\(\)](#) function to the Date Helper.
- Added [\\$query->free_result\(\)](#) to database class.
- Added [\\$query->list_fields\(\)](#) function to database class
- Added [\\$this->db->platform\(\)](#) function
- Added new [File Helper](#): [get_filenames\(\)](#)
- Added new helper: [Smiley Helper](#)
- Added support for `` and `` lists in the [HTML Helper](#)
- Added the ability to rewrite [short tags](#) on-the-fly, converting them to standard PHP statements, for those servers that do not support short tags. This allows the cleaner syntax to be used regardless of whether it's supported by the server.
- Added the ability to [rename or relocate the "application" folder](#).
- Added more thorough initialization in the upload class so that all class variables are reset.
- Added "is_numeric" to validation, which uses the native PHP [is_numeric](#) function.
- Improved the URI handler to make it more reliable when the \$config ['uri_protocol'] item is set to AUTO.
- Moved most of the functions in the Controller class into the Loader class, allowing fewer reserved function names for controllers when running under PHP 5.
- Updated the DB Result class to return an empty array when [\\$query->result\(\)](#) doesn't produce a result.
- Updated the [input->cookie\(\)](#) and [input->post\(\)](#) functions in [Input Class](#) to permit arrays contained cookies that are arrays to be run through the XSS filter.
- Documented three functions from the [Validation class](#) that were missing from the user guide: [set_select\(\)](#), [set_radio\(\)](#), and [set_checkbox\(\)](#).
- Fixed a bug in the Email class related to SMTP Hello data.
- Fixed a bug in the word wrapping helper and function in the email class.
- Fixed a bug in the validation class.
- Fixed a bug in the typography helper that was incorrectly wrapping

block level elements in paragraph tags.

- Fixed a problem in the `form_prep()` function that was double encoding entities.
- Fixed a bug that affects some versions of PHP when output buffering is nested.
- Fixed a bug that caused CI to stop working when the PHP magic `__get()` or `__set()` functions were used within models or controllers.
- Fixed a pagination bug that was permitting negative values in the URL.
- Fixed an oversight in which the Loader class was not allowed to be extended.
- Changed `_get_config()` to `get_config()` since the function is not a private one.
- **Deprecated "init" folder.** Initialization happens automatically now. [Please see documentation.](#)
- **Deprecated** `$this->db->field_names()` USE `$this->db->list_fields()`
- **Deprecated** the `$config['log_errors']` item from the config.php file. Instead, `$config['log_threshold']` can be set to "0" to turn it off.

Version 1.4.1

Release Date: September 21, 2006

- Added a new feature that passes URI segments directly to your function calls as parameters. See the [Controllers](#) page for more info.
- Added support for a function named `_output()`, which when used in your controllers will receive the final rendered output from the output class. More info in the [Controllers](#) page.
- Added several new functions in the [URI Class](#) to let you retrieve and manipulate URI segments that have been re-routed using the [URI Routing](#) feature. Previously, the URI class did not permit you to access any re-routed URI segments, but now it does.
- Added `$this->output->set_header()` function, which allows you to set server headers.
- Updated plugins, helpers, and language classes to allow your **application** folder to contain its own plugins, helpers, and language

folders. Previously they were always treated as global for your entire installation. If your application folder contains any of these resources they will be used *instead* the global ones.

- Added [Inflector helper](#).
- Added **element()** function in the [array helper](#).
- Added **RAND()** to active record **orderby()** function.
- Added **delete_cookie()** and **get_cookie()** to [Cookie helper](#), even though the input class has a cookie fetching function.
- Added Oracle database driver (still undergoing testing so it might have some bugs).
- Added the ability to combine pseudo-variables and php variables in the template parser class.
- Added output compression option to the config file.
- Removed the is_numeric test from the db->escape() function.
- Fixed a MySQLi bug that was causing error messages not to contain proper error data.
- Fixed a bug in the email class which was causing it to ignore explicitly set alternative headers.
- Fixed a bug that was causing a PHP error when the Exceptions class was called within the get_config() function since it was causing problems.
- Fixed an oversight in the cookie helper in which the config file cookie settings were not being honored.
- Fixed an oversight in the upload class. An item mentioned in the 1.4 changelog was missing.
- Added some code to allow email attachments to be reset when sending batches of email.
- Deprecated the **application/scripts** folder. It will continue to work for legacy users, but it is recommended that you create your own [libraries](#) or [models](#) instead. It was originally added before CI had user libraries or models, but it's not needed anymore.
- Deprecated the **\$autoload['core']** item from the **autoload.php** file. Instead, please now use: **\$autoload['libraries']**
- Deprecated the following database functions: \$this->db->smart_escape_str() and \$this->db->fields().

Version 1.4.0

Release Date: September 17, 2006

- Added [Hooks](#) feature, enabling you to tap into and modify the inner workings of the framework without hacking the core files.
- Added the ability to organize controller files [into sub-folders](#). Kudos to Marco for [suggesting](#) this (and the next two) feature.
- Added regular expressions support for [routing rules](#).
- Added the ability to [remap function calls](#) within your controllers.
- Added the ability to [replace core system classes](#) with your own classes.
- Added support for % character in URL.
- Added the ability to supply full URLs using the [anchor\(\)](#) helper function.
- Added mode parameter to [file_write\(\)](#) helper.
- Added support for changing the port number in the [Postgre driver](#).
- Moved the list of "allowed URI characters" out of the Router class and into the config file.
- Moved the MIME type array out of the Upload class and into its own file in the applications/config/ folder.
- Updated the Upload class to allow the upload field name to be set when calling [do_upload\(\)](#).
- Updated the [Config Library](#) to be able to load config files silently, and to be able to assign config files to their own index (to avoid collisions if you use multiple config files).
- Updated the URI Protocol code to allow more options so that URLs will work more reliably in different environments.
- Updated the [form_open\(\)](#) helper to allow the GET method to be used.
- Updated the MySQLi [execute\(\)](#) function with some code to help prevent lost connection errors.
- Updated the SQLite Driver to check for object support before attempting to return results as objects. If unsupported it returns an array.
- Updated the Models loader function to allow multiple loads of the

same model.

- Updated the MS SQL driver so that single quotes are escaped.
- Updated the Postgre and ODBC drivers for better compatibility.
- Removed a strtolower() call that was changing URL segments to lower case.
- Removed some references that were interfering with PHP 4.4.1 compatibility.
- Removed backticks from Postgre class since these are not needed.
- Renamed **display()** to **_display()** in the Output class to make it clear that it's a private function.
- Deprecated the hash() function due to a naming conflict with a native PHP function with the same name. Please use **dohash()** instead.
- Fixed an bug that was preventing the input class from unsetting GET variables.
- Fixed a router bug that was making it too greedy when matching end segments.
- Fixed a bug that was preventing multiple discreet database calls.
- Fixed a bug in which loading a language file was producing a "file contains no data" message.
- Fixed a session bug caused by the XSS Filtering feature inadvertently changing the case of certain words.
- Fixed some missing prefixes when using the database prefix feature.
- Fixed a typo in the Calendar class (cal_november).
- Fixed a bug in the **form_checkbox()** helper.
- Fixed a bug that was allowing the second segment of the URI to be identical to the class name.
- Fixed an evaluation bug in the database initialization function.
- Fixed a minor bug in one of the error messages in the language class.
- Fixed a bug in the date helper **timespan** function.
- Fixed an undefined variable in the DB Driver class.
- Fixed a bug in which dollar signs used as binding replacement values in the DB class would be treated as RegEx back-references.
- Fixed a bug in the **set_hash()** function which was preventing MD5

from being used.

- Fixed a couple bugs in the Unit Testing class.
- Fixed an incorrectly named variable in the Validation class.
- Fixed an incorrectly named variable in the URI class.
- Fixed a bug in the config class that was preventing the base URL from being called properly.
- Fixed a bug in the validation class that was not permitting callbacks if the form field was empty.
- Fixed a problem that was preventing scaffolding from working properly with MySQLi.
- Fixed some MS SQL bugs.
- Fixed some doc typos.

Version 1.3.3

Release Date: June 1, 2006

- Models do **not** connect automatically to the database as of this version. [More info here](#).
- Updated the Sessions class to utilize the active record class when running session related queries. Previously the queries assumed MySQL syntax.
- Updated alternator() function to re-initialize when called with no arguments, allowing multiple calls.
- Fixed a bug in the active record "having" function.
- Fixed a problem in the validation class which was making checkboxes be ignored when required.
- Fixed a bug in the word_limiter() helper function. It was cutting off the first word.
- Fixed a bug in the xss_clean function due to a PHP bug that affects some versions of html_entity_decode.
- Fixed a validation bug that was preventing rules from being set twice in one controller.
- Fixed a calendar bug that was not letting it use dynamically loaded languages.
- Fixed a bug in the active record class when using WHERE clauses

with LIKE

- Fixed a bug in the hash() security helper.
- Fixed some typos.

Version 1.3.2

Release Date: April 17, 2006

- Changed the behavior of the validation class such that if a "required" rule is NOT explicitly stated for a field then all other tests get ignored.
- Fixed a bug in the Controller class that was causing it to look in the local "init" folder instead of the main system one.
- Fixed a bug in the init_pagination file. The \$config item was not being set correctly.
- Fixed a bug in the auto typography helper that was causing inconsistent behavior.
- Fixed a couple bugs in the Model class.
- Fixed some documentation typos and errata.

Version 1.3.1

Release Date: April 11, 2006

- Added a [Unit Testing Library](#).
- Added the ability to pass objects to the **insert()** and **update()** database functions. This feature enables you to (among other things) use your [Model class](#) variables to run queries with. See the Models page for details.
- Added the ability to pass objects to the [view loading function](#): `$this->load->view('my_view', $object);`
- Added **getwhere** function to [Active Record class](#).
- Added **count_all** function to [Active Record class](#).
- Added language file for scaffolding and fixed a scaffolding bug that occurs when there are no rows in the specified table.
- Added `$this->db->last_query()`, which allows you to view your last query that was run.

- Added a new mime type to the upload class for better compatibility.
- Changed how cache files are read to prevent PHP errors if the cache file contains an XML tag, which PHP wants to interpret as a short tag.
- Fixed a bug in a couple of the active record functions (where and orderby).
- Fixed a bug in the image library when realpath() returns false.
- Fixed a bug in the Models that was preventing libraries from being used within them.
- Fixed a bug in the "exact_length" function of the validation class.
- Fixed some typos in the user guide

Version 1.3

Release Date: April 3, 2006

- Added support for [Models](#).
- Redesigned the database libraries to support additional RDBMs (Postgre, MySQLi, etc.).
- Redesigned the [Active Record class](#) to enable more varied types of queries with simpler syntax, and advanced features like JOINS.
- Added a feature to the database class that lets you run [custom function calls](#).
- Added support for [private functions](#) in your controllers. Any controller function name that starts with an underscore will not be served by a URI request.
- Added the ability to pass your own initialization parameters to your [custom core libraries](#) when using \$this->load->library()
- Added support for running standard [query string URLs](#). These can be optionally enabled in your config file.
- Added the ability to [specify a "suffix"](#), which will be appended to your URLs. For example, you could add .html to your URLs, making them appear static. This feature is enabled in your config file.
- Added a new error template for use with native PHP errors.
- Added "alternator" function in the [string helpers](#).
- Removed slashing from the input class. After much debate we

decided to kill this feature.

- Change the commenting style in the scripts to the PEAR standard so that IDEs and tools like phpDocumenter can harvest the comments.
- Added better class and function name-spacing to avoid collisions with user developed classes. All CodeIgniter classes are now prefixed with **CI_** and all controller methods are prefixed with **_ci** to avoid controller collisions. A list of reserved function names can be [found here](#).
- Redesigned how the "CI" super object is referenced, depending on whether PHP 4 or 5 is being run, since PHP 5 allows a more graceful way to manage objects that utilizes a bit less resources.
- Deprecated: **`$this->db->use_table()`** has been deprecated. Please read the [Active Record](#) page for information.
- Deprecated: **`$this->db->smart_escape_str()`** has been deprecated. Please use this instead: **`$this->db->escape()`**
- Fixed a bug in the exception handler which was preventing some PHP errors from showing up.
- Fixed a typo in the URI class. `$this->total_segment()` should be plural: `$this->total_segments()`
- Fixed some typos in the default calendar template
- Fixed some typos in the user guide

Version 1.2

Release Date: March 21, 2006

- Redesigned some internal aspects of the framework to resolve scoping problems that surfaced during the beta tests. The problem was most notable when instantiating classes in your constructors, particularly if those classes in turn did work in their constructors.
- Added a global function named [get_instance\(\)](#) allowing the main CodeIgniter object to be accessible throughout your own classes.
- Added new [File Helper](#): `delete_files()`
- Added new [URL Helpers](#): `base_url()`, `index_page()`
- Added the ability to create your own [core libraries](#) and store them in your local application directory.
- Added an **overwrite** option to the [Upload class](#), enabling files to be

overwritten rather than having the file name appended.

- Added Javascript Calendar plugin.
- Added search feature to user guide. Note: This is done using Google, which at the time of this writing has not crawled all the pages of the docs.
- Updated the parser class so that it allows tag pars within other tag pairs.
- Fixed a bug in the DB "where" function.
- Fixed a bug that was preventing custom config files to be auto-loaded.
- Fixed a bug in the mysql class bind feature that prevented question marks in the replacement data.
- Fixed some bugs in the xss_clean function

Version Beta 1.1

Release Date: March 10, 2006

- Added a [Calendaring class](#).
- Added support for running [multiple applications](#) that share a common CodeIgniter backend.
- Moved the "uri protocol" variable from the index.php file into the config.php file
- Fixed a problem that was preventing certain function calls from working within constructors.
- Fixed a problem that was preventing the \$this->load->library function from working in constructors.
- Fixed a bug that occurred when the session class was loaded using the auto-load routine.
- Fixed a bug that can happen with PHP versions that do not support the E_STRICT constant
- Fixed a data type error in the form_radio function (form helper)
- Fixed a bug that was preventing the xss_clean function from being called from the validation class.
- Fixed the cookie related config names, which were incorrectly specified as \$conf rather than \$config

- Fixed a pagination problem in the scaffolding.
- Fixed a bug in the mysql class "where" function.
- Fixed a regex problem in some code that trimmed duplicate slashes.
- Fixed a bug in the br() function in the HTML helper
- Fixed a syntax mistake in the form_dropdown function in the Form Helper.
- Removed the "style" attributes from the form helpers.
- Updated the documentation. Added "next/previous" links to each page and fixed various typos.

Version Beta 1.0

Release Date: February 28, 2006

First publicly released version.

Previous Topic: [License Agreement](#) · [Top of Page](#) · [User Guide Home](#) · Next Topic: [Credits](#)

[CodeIgniter](#) · Copyright © 2007 · [Ellislab, Inc.](#)

Image Manipulation Class

CodeIgniter's Image Manipulation class lets you perform the following actions:

- Image Resizing
- Thumbnail Creation
- Image Cropping
- Image Rotating
- Image Watermarking

All three major image libraries are supported: GD/GD2, NetPBM, and ImageMagick

Note: Watermarking is only available using the GD/GD2 library. In addition, even though other libraries are supported, GD is required in order for the script to calculate the image properties. The image processing, however, will be performed with the library you specify.

Initializing the Class

Like most other classes in CodeIgniter, the image class is initialized in your controller using the **`$this->load_library`** function:

```
$this->load->library('image_lib');
```

Once the library is loaded it will be ready for use. The image library object you will use to call all functions is: **`$this->image_lib`**

Processing an Image

Regardless of the type of processing you would like to perform (resizing, cropping, rotation, or watermarking), the general process is identical. You will set some preferences corresponding to the action you intend to perform, then call one of four available processing functions. For example, to create an image thumbnail you'll do this:

```

$config['image_library'] = 'GD';
$config['source_image'] = '/path/to/image/mypic.jpg';
$config['create_thumb'] = TRUE;
$config['maintain_ratio'] = TRUE;
$config['width'] = 75;
$config['height'] = 50;

$this->load->library('image_lib', $config);

$this->image_lib->resize();

```

The above code tells the **image_resize** function to look for an image called *mypic.jpg* located in the **source_image** folder, then create a thumbnail that is 75 X 50 pixels using the GD2 **image_library**. Since the **maintain_ratio** option is enabled, the thumb will be as close to the target **width** and **height** as possible while preserving the original aspect ratio. The thumbnail will be called *mypic_thumb.jpg*

Note: In order for the image class to be allowed to do any processing, the folder containing the image files must have file permissions of 777.

Processing Functions

There are four available processing functions:

- `$this->image_lib->resize()`
- `$this->image_lib->crop()`
- `$this->image_lib->rotate()`
- `$this->image_lib->watermark()`

These functions return boolean TRUE upon success and FALSE for failure. If they fail you can retrieve the error message using this function:

```
echo $this->image_lib->display_errors();
```

A good practice is use the processing function conditionally, showing an error upon failure, like this:

```

if ( ! $this->image_lib->resize() )
{
    echo $this->image_lib->display_errors();
}

```

Note: You can optionally specify the HTML formatting to be applied to the errors, by submitting the opening/closing tags in the function, like this:

```
$this->image_lib->display_errors('<p>', '</p>');
```

Preferences

The 14 available preferences described below allow you to tailor the image processing to suit your needs.

Note that not all preferences are available for every function. For example, the x/y axis preferences are only available for image cropping. Likewise, the width and height preferences have no effect on cropping. The "availability" column indicates which functions support a given preference.

Availability Legend:

- **R** - Image Resizing
- **C** - Image Cropping
- **X** - Image Rotation
- **W** - Image Watermarking

Preference	Default Value	Options	Description	Availability
image_library	GD2	GD, GD2, ImageMagick, NetPBM	Sets the image library to be used.	R, C, X, W
library_path	None	None	Sets the server path to your ImageMagick or NetPBM library. If you use either of those libraries you must supply the path.	R, C, X
source_image	None	None	Sets the source image name/path. The path must be a relative or absolute server path, not a URL.	R, C, S, W

dynamic_output	FALSE	TRUE/FALSE (boolean)	Determines whether the new image file should be written to disk or generated dynamically. Note: If you choose the dynamic setting, only one image can be shown at a time, and it can't be positioned on the page. It simply outputs the raw image dynamically to your browser, along with image headers.	R, C, X, W
quality	90%	1 - 100%	Sets the quality of the image. The higher the quality the larger the file size.	R, C, X, W
new_image	None	None	Sets the destination image name/path. You'll use this preference when creating an image copy. The path must be a relative or absolute server path, not a URL.	R
width	None	None	Sets the width you would like the image set to.	R, C
height	None	None	Sets the height you would like the image set to.	R, C
create_thumb	FALSE	TRUE/FALSE (boolean)	Tells the image processing function to create a thumb.	R
thumb_marker	_thumb	None	Specifies the thumbnail indicator. It will be inserted just before the file extension, so mypic.jpg would become mypic_thumb.jpg	R

maintain_ratio	TRUE	TRUE/FALSE (boolean)	Specifies whether to maintain the original aspect ratio when resizing or use hard values.	R
master_dim	auto	auto, width, height	Specifies what to use as the master axis when resizing or creating thumbs. For example, let's say you want to resize an image to 100 X 75 pixels. If the source image size does not allow perfect resizing to those dimensions, this setting determines which axis should be used as the hard value. "auto" sets the axis automatically based on whether the image is taller than wider, or vice versa.	R
rotation_angle	None	90, 180, 270, vrt, hor	Specifies the angle of rotation when rotating images. Note that PHP rotates counter-clockwise, so a 90 degree rotation to the right must be specified as 270.	X
x_axis	None	None	Sets the X coordinate in pixels for image cropping. For example, a setting of 30 will crop an image 30 pixels from the left.	C

y_axis	None	None	Sets the Y coordinate in pixels for image cropping. For example, a setting of 30 will crop an image 30 pixels from the top.	C
---------------	------	------	---	---

Setting preferences in a config file

If you prefer not to set preferences using the above method, you can instead put them into a config file. Simply create a new file called the **image_lib.php**, add the **\$config** array in that file. Then save the file in: **config/image_lib.php** and it will be used automatically. You will NOT need to use the **\$this->image_lib->initialize** function if you save your preferences in a config file.

\$this->image_lib->resize()

The image resizing function lets you resize the original image, create a copy (with or without resizing), or create a thumbnail image.

For practical purposes there is no difference between creating a copy and creating a thumbnail except a thumb will have the thumbnail marker as part of the name (ie, mypic_thumb.jpg).

All preferences listed in the table above are available for this function except these three: rotation, x_axis, and y_axis.

Creating a Thumbnail

The resizing function will create a thumbnail file (and preserve the original) if you set this preference so TRUE:

```
$config['create_thumb'] = TRUE;
```

This single preference determines whether a thumbnail is created or not.

Creating a Copy

The resizing function will create a copy of the image file (and preserve the original) if you set a path and/or a new filename using this preference:

```
$config['new_image'] = '/path/to/new_image.jpg';
```

Notes regarding this preference:

- If only the new image name is specified it will be placed in the same folder as the original
- If only the path is specified, the new image will be placed in the destination with the same name as the original.
- If both the path and image name are specified it will be placed in its own destination and given the new name.

Resizing the Original Image

If neither of the two preferences listed above (`create_thumb`, and `new_image`) are used, the resizing function will instead target the original image for processing.

`$this->image_lib->crop()`

The cropping function works nearly identically to the resizing function except it requires that you set preferences for the X and Y axis (in pixels) specifying where to crop, like this:

```
$config['x_axis'] = '100';
$config['y_axis'] = '40';
```

All preferences listed in the table above are available for this function except these: `rotation`, `width`, `height`, `create_thumb`, `new_image`.

Here's an example showing how you might crop an image:

```
$config['image_library'] = 'imagemagick';
$config['library_path'] = '/usr/X11R6/bin/';
$config['source_image'] = '/path/to/image/mypic.jpg';
$config['x_axis'] = '100';
$config['y_axis'] = '60';

$this->image_lib->initialize($config);

if ( ! $this->image_lib->crop() )
{
    echo $this->image_lib->display_errors();
}
```

Note: Without a visual interface it is difficult to crop images, so this function is not very useful unless you intend to build such an interface. That's exactly what we did using for the photo gallery module in ExpressionEngine, the CMS we develop. We added a JavaScript UI that lets the cropping area be selected.

`$this->image_lib->rotate()`

The image rotation function requires that the angle of rotation be set via its preference:

```
$config['rotation_angle'] = '90';
```

There are 5 rotation options:

1. 90 - rotates counter-clockwise by 90 degrees.
2. 180 - rotates counter-clockwise by 180 degrees.
3. 270 - rotates counter-clockwise by 270 degrees.
4. hor - flips the image horizontally.
5. vrt - flips the image vertically.

Here's an example showing how you might rotate an image:

```
$config['image_library'] = 'netpbm';
$config['library_path'] = '/usr/bin/';
$config['source_image'] = '/path/to/image/mypic.jpg';
$config['rotation_angle'] = 'hor';

$this->image_lib->initialize($config);

if ( ! $this->image_lib->rotate() )
{
    echo $this->image_lib->display_errors();
}
```

Image Watermarking

The Watermarking feature requires the GD/GD2 library.

Two Types of Watermarking

There are two types of watermarking that you can use:

- **Text:** The watermark message will be generating using text, either with a True Type font that you specify, or using the native text output that the GD library supports. If you use the True Type version your GD installation must be compiled with True Type support (most are, but not all).
- **Overlay:** The watermark message will be generated by overlaying an image (usually a transparent PNG or GIF) containing your watermark over the source image.

Watermarking an Image

Just as with the other function (resizing, cropping, and rotating) the general process for watermarking involves setting the preferences corresponding to the action you intend to perform, then calling the watermark function. Here is an example:

```
$config['source_image'] = '/path/to/image/mypic.jpg';  
$config['wm_text'] = 'Copyright 2006 - John Doe';  
$config['wm_type'] = 'text';  
$config['wm_font_path'] = './system/fonts/texb.ttf';  
$config['wm_font_size'] = '16';  
$config['wm_font_color'] = 'ffffff';  
$config['wm_vrt_alignment'] = 'bottom';  
$config['wm_hor_alignment'] = 'center';  
$config['wm_padding'] = '20';  
  
$this->image_lib->initialize($config);  
  
$this->image_lib->watermark();
```

The above example will use a 16 pixel True Type font to create the text "Copyright 2006 - John Doe". The watermark will be positioned at the bottom/center of the image, 20 pixels from the bottom of the image.

Note: In order for the image class to be allowed to do any processing, the image file must have file permissions of 777.

Watermarking Preferences

This table shown the preferences that are available for both types of watermarking (text or overlay)

Preference	Default Value	Options	Description
wm_type	text	type, overlay	Sets the type of watermarking that should be used.
source_image	None	None	Sets the source image name/path. The path must be a relative or absolute server path, not a URL.
dynamic_output	FALSE	TRUE/FALSE (boolean)	Determines whether the new image file should be written to disk or generated dynamically. Note: If you choose the dynamic setting, only one image can be shown at a time, and it can't be positioned on the page. It simply outputs the raw image dynamically to your browser, along with image headers.
quality	90%	1 - 100%	Sets the quality of the image. The higher the quality the larger the file size.
padding	None	A number	The amount of padding, set in pixels, that will be applied to the watermark to set it away from the edge of your images.
wm_vrt_alignment	bottom	top, middle, bottom	Sets the vertical alignment for the watermark image.
wm_hor_alignment	center	left, center, right	Sets the horizontal alignment for the watermark image.
wm_vrt_offset	None	None	You may specify a horizontal offset (in pixels) to apply to the watermark position. The offset normally moves the watermark to the right, except if you have your alignment set to "right" then your offset value will move the watermark toward the left of the image.

wm_hor_offset	None	None	You may specify a horizontal offset (in pixels) to apply to the watermark position. The offset normally moves the watermark down, except if you have your alignment set to "bottom" then your offset value will move the watermark toward the top of the image.
----------------------	------	------	---

Text Preferences

This table shown the preferences that are available for the text type of watermarking.

Preference	Default Value	Options	Description
wm_text	None	None	The text you would like shown as the watermark. Typically this will be a copyright notice.
wm_font_path	None	None	The server path to the True Type Font you would like to use. If you do not use this option, the native GD font will be used.
wm_font_size	16	None	The size of the text. Note: If you are not using the True Type option above, the number is set using a range of 1 - 5. Otherwise, you can use any valid pixel size for the font you're using.
wm_font_color	ffffff	None	The font color, specified in hex. Note, you must use the full 6 character hex value (ie, 993300), rather than the three character abbreviated version (ie fff).
wm_shadow_color	None	None	The color of the drop shadow, specified in hex. If you leave this blank a drop shadow will not be used. Note, you must use the full 6 character hex value (ie, 993300), rather than the three character abbreviated version (ie fff).
wm_shadow_distance	3	None	The distance (in pixels) from the font that the drop shadow should appear.

Overlay Preferences

This table shown the preferences that are available for the overlay type of watermarking.

Preference	Default Value	Options	Description
wm_overlay_path	None	None	The server path to the image you wish to use as your watermark. Required only if you are using the overlay method.
wm_opacity	50	1 - 100	Image opacity. You may specify the opacity (i.e. transparency) of your watermark image. This allows the watermark to be faint and not completely obscure the details from the original image behind it. A 50% opacity is typical.
wm_x_transp	4	A number	If your watermark image is a PNG or GIF image, you may specify a color on the image to be "transparent". This setting (along with the next) will allow you to specify that color. This works by specifying the "X" and "Y" coordinate pixel (measured from the upper left) within the image that corresponds to a pixel representative of the color you want to be transparent.
wm_y_transp	4	A number	Along with the previous setting, this allows you to specify the coordinate to a pixel representative of the color you want to be transparent.

Previous Topic: [HTML Table Class](#) · [Top of Page](#) · [User Guide Home](#) · Next Topic: [Input Class](#)

[CodeIgniter](#) · Copyright © 2007 · [Ellislab, Inc.](#)

Zip Encoding Class

CodeIgniter's Zip Encoding Class classes permit you to create Zip archives. Archives can be downloaded to your desktop or saved to a directory.

Initializing the Class

Like most other classes in CodeIgniter, the Zip class is initialized in your controller using the **`$this->load->library`** function:

```
$this->load->library('zip');
```

Once loaded, the Zip library object will be available using: **`$this->zip`**

Usage Example

This example demonstrates how to compress a file, save it to a folder on your server, and download it to your desktop.

```
$name = 'mydata1.txt';
$data = 'A Data String!';

$this->zip->add_data($name, $data);

// Write the zip file to a folder on your server. Name it "my_backup.zip"
$this->zip->archive('/path/to/directory/my_backup.zip');

// Download the file to your desktop. Name it "my_backup.zip"
$this->zip->download('my_backup.zip');
```

Function Reference

`$this->zip->add_data()`

Permits you to add data to the Zip archive. The first parameter must contain the name you would like given to the file, the second parameter must contain the file data as a string:

```
$name = 'my_bio.txt';  
$data = 'I was born in an elevator...';  
  
$this->zip->add_data($name, $data);
```

You are allowed multiple calls to this function in order to add several files to your archive. Example:

```
$name = 'mydata1.txt';  
$data = 'A Data String!';  
$this->zip->add_data($name, $data);  
  
$name = 'mydata2.txt';  
$data = 'Another Data String!';  
$this->zip->add_data($name, $data);
```

Or you can pass multiple files using an array:

```
$data = array(  
    'mydata1.txt' => 'A Data String!',  
    'mydata2.txt' => 'Another Data String!'  
);  
  
$this->zip->add_data($data);  
  
$this->zip->download('my_backup.zip');
```

If you would like your compressed data organized into sub-folders, include the path as part of the filename:

```
$name = 'personal/my_bio.txt';  
$data = 'I was born in an elevator...';  
  
$this->zip->add_data($name, $data);
```

The above example will place **my_bio.txt** inside a folder called **personal**.

`$this->zip->add_dir()`

Permits you to add a directory. Usually this function is unnecessary since you can place your data into folders when using `$this->zip->add_data()`, but if you would like to create an empty folder you can do so. Example:

```
$this->zip->add_dir('myfolder'); // Creates a folder called "myfolder"
```

`$this->zip->read_file()`

Permits you to compress a file that already exists somewhere on your server. Supply a file path and the zip class will read it and add it to the archive:

```
$path = '/path/to/photo.jpg';

$this->zip->read_file($path);

// Download the file to your desktop. Name it "my_backup.zip"
$this->zip->download('my_backup.zip');
```

If you would like the Zip archive to maintain the directory structure the file is in, pass **TRUE** (boolean) in the second parameter. Example:

```
$path = '/path/to/photo.jpg';

$this->zip->read_file($path, TRUE);

// Download the file to your desktop. Name it "my_backup.zip"
$this->zip->download('my_backup.zip');
```

In the above example, **photo.jpg** will be placed inside two folders: **path/to/**

`$this->zip->read_dir()`

Permits you to compress a folder (and its contents) that already exists somewhere on your server. Supply a file path to the directory and the zip class will recursively read it and recreate it as a Zip

archive. All files contained within the supplied path will be encoded, as will any sub-folders contained within it. Example:

```
$path = '/path/to/your/directory/';

$this->zip->read_dir($path);

// Download the file to your desktop. Name it "my_backup.zip"
$this->zip->download('my_backup.zip');
```

`$this->zip->archive()`

Writes the Zip-encoded file to a directory on your server. Submit a valid server path ending in the file name. Make sure the directory is writable (666 or 777 is usually OK). Example:

```
$this->zip->archive('/path/to/folder/myarchive.zip'); // Creates a file named
myarchive.zip
```

`$this->zip->download()`

Causes the Zip file to be downloaded to your server. The function must be passed the name you would like the zip file called. Example:

```
$this->zip->download('latest_stuff.zip'); // File will be named "latest_stuff.zip"
```

Note: Do not display any data in the controller in which you call this function since it sends various server headers that cause the download to happen and the file to be treated as binary.

`$this->zip->get_zip()`

Returns the Zip-compressed file data. Generally you will not need this function unless you want to do something unique with the data. Example:

```
$name = 'my_bio.txt';
```

```
$data = 'I was born in an elevator...';  
  
$this->zip->add_data($name, $data);  
  
$zip_file = $this->zip->get_zip();
```

`$this->zip->clear_data()`

The Zip class caches your zip data so that it doesn't need to recompile the Zip archive for each function you use above. If, however, you need to create multiple Zips, each with different data, you can clear the cache between calls. Example:

```
$name = 'my_bio.txt';  
$data = 'I was born in an elevator...';  
  
$this->zip->add_data($name, $data);  
$zip_file = $this->zip->get_zip();  
  
$this->zip->clear_data();  
  
$name = 'photo.jpg';  
$this->zip->read_file("/path/to/photo.jpg"); // Read the file's contents  
  
$this->zip->download('myphotos.zip');
```

Previous Topic: [XML-RPC Class](#) · [Top of Page](#) · [User Guide Home](#) · Next Topic: [Array Helper](#)

CodeIgniter · Copyright © 2007 · Ellislab, Inc.

Smiley Helper


The Smiley Helper file contains functions that let you manage smileys (emoticons).

Loading this Helper

This helper is loaded using the following code:

```
$this->load->helper('smiley');
```

Overview

The Smiley helper has a renderer that takes plain text smileys, like `:-)` and turns them into a image representation, like .

It also lets you display a set of smiley images that when clicked will be inserted into a form field. For example, if you have a blog that allows user commenting you can show the smileys next to the comment form. Your users can click a desired smiley and with the help of some JavaScript it will be placed into the form field.

Clickable Smileys Tutorial

Here is an example demonstrating how you might create a set of clickable smileys next to a form field. This example requires that you first download and install the smiley images, then create a controller and the View as described.

Important: Before you begin, please [download the smiley images](#) and put them in a publicly accessible place on your server. This helper also assumes you have the smiley replacement array located at [application/config/smileys.php](#)

The Controller

In your **application/controllers/** folder, create a file called **smileys.php** and place the code below in it.

Important: Change the URL in the **get_clickable_smileys()** function below so that it points to your **smiley** folder.

You'll notice that in addition to the smiley helper we are using the [Table Class](#).

In your **application/views/** folder, create a file called **smiley_view.php** and place this code in it:

When you have created the above controller and view, load it by visiting **<http://www.your=site.com/index.php/smileys/>**

Function Reference

get_clickable_smileys()

Returns an array containing your smiley images wrapped in a clickable link. You must supply the URL to your smiley folder via the first parameter:

```
$image_array = get_clickable_smileys("http://www.your-site.com/images/smileys/");
```

js_insert_smiley()

Generates the JavaScript that allows the images to be clicked and inserted into a form field. The first parameter must contain the name of your form, the second parameter must contain the name of the form field. This function is designed to be placed into the `<head>` area of your web page.

```
<?php echo js_insert_smiley('blog', 'comments'); ?>
```

parse_smileys()

Takes a string of text as input and replaces any contained plain text smileys into the image equivalent. The first parameter must contain your string, the second must contain the the URL to your smiley folder:

```
$str = 'Here are some simileys: :-) ;-)'; $str = parse_smileys($str, "http://  
www.your-site.com/images/smileys/"); echo $str;
```

Previous Topic: [Security Helper](#) · [Top of Page](#) · [User Guide Home](#) · Next Topic: [String Helper](#)

[CodeIgniter](#) · Copyright © 2007 · [Ellislab, Inc.](#)

File Helper

The File Helper file contains functions that assist in working with files.

Loading this Helper

This helper is loaded using the following code:

```
$this->load->helper('file');
```

The following functions are available:

`read_file('path')`

Returns the data contained in the file specified in the path. Example:

```
$string = read_file('./path/to/file.php');
```

The path can be a relative or full server path. Returns FALSE (boolean) on failure.

Note: The path is relative to your main site index.php file, NOT your controller or view files. CodeIgniter uses a front controller so paths are always relative to the main site index.

If your server is running an `open_basedir` restriction this function might not work if you are trying to access a file above the calling script.

`write_file('path', $data)`

Writes data to the file specified in the path. If the file does not exist

the function will create it. Example:

```
$data = 'Some file data';

if ( ! write_file('./path/to/file.php', $data))
{
    echo 'Unable to write the file';
}
else
{
    echo 'File written!';
}
```

You can optionally set the write mode via the third parameter:

```
write_file('./path/to/file.php', $data, 'r+');
```

The default mode is **wb**. Please see the [PHP user guide](#) for mode options.

Note: In order for this function to write data to a file its file permissions must be set such that it is writable (666, 777, etc.). If the file does not already exist, the directory containing it must be writable.

Note: The path is relative to your main site index.php file, NOT your controller or view files. CodeIgniter uses a front controller so paths are always relative to the main site index.

delete_files('path')

Deletes ALL files contained in the supplied path. Example:

```
delete_files('./path/to/directory/');
```

If the second parameter is set to **true**, any directories contained within the supplied root path will be deleted as well. Example:

```
delete_files('./path/to/directory/', TRUE);
```

Note: The files must be writable or owned by the system in order to be deleted.

get_filenames('path/to/directory/')

Takes a server path as input and returns an array containing the names of all files contained within it. The file path can optionally be added to the file names by setting the second parameter to TRUE.

Previous Topic: [Directory Helper](#) · [Top of Page](#) · [User Guide Home](#) · Next Topic: [Form Helper](#)

[CodeIgniter](#) · Copyright © 2007 · [Ellislab, Inc.](#)

Email Class

CodeIgniter's robust Email Class supports the following features:

- Multiple Protocols: Mail, Sendmail, and SMTP
- Multiple recipients
- CC and BCCs
- HTML or Plaintext email
- Attachments
- Word wrapping
- Priorities
- BCC Batch Mode, enabling large email lists to be broken into small BCC batches.
- Email Debugging tools

Sending Email

Sending email is not only simple, but you can configure it on the fly or set your preferences in a config file.

Here is a basic example demonstrating how you might send email.

Note: This example assumes you are sending the email from one of your [controllers](#).

```
$this->load->library('email');

$this->email->from('your@your-site.com', 'Your Name');
$this->email->to('someone@example.com');
$this->email->cc('another@another-example.com');
$this->email->bcc('them@their-example.com');

$this->email->subject('Email Test');
$this->email->message('Testing the email class.');
```



```
$this->email->send();

echo $this->email->print_debugger();
```

Setting Email Preferences

There are 17 different preferences available to tailor how your email messages are sent. You can either set them manually as described here, or automatically via preferences stored in your config file, described below:

Preferences are set by passing an array of preference values to the email **initialize** function. Here is an example of how you might set some preferences:

```
$config['protocol'] = 'sendmail';
$config['mailpath'] = '/usr/sbin/sendmail';
$config['charset'] = 'iso-8859-1';
$config['wordwrap'] = TRUE;

$this->email->initialize($config);
```

Note: Most of the preferences have default values that will be used if you do not set them.

Setting Email Preferences in a Config File

If you prefer not to set preferences using the above method, you can instead put them into a config file. Simply create a new file called the **email.php**, add the **\$config** array in that file. Then save the file at **config/email.php** and it will be used automatically. You will NOT need to use the **\$this->email->initialize()** function if you save your preferences in a config file.

Email Preferences

The following is a list of all the preferences that can be set when sending email.

Preference	Default Value	Options	Description
useragent	CodeIgniter	None	The "user agent".
protocol	mail	mail, sendmail, or smtp	The mail sending protocol.

mailpath	/usr/sbin/sendmail	None	The server path to Sendmail.
smtp_host	No Default	None	SMTP Server Address.
smtp_user	No Default	None	SMTP Username.
smtp_pass	No Default	None	SMTP Password.
smtp_port	25	None	SMTP Port.
smtp_timeout	5	None	SMTP Timeout (in seconds).
wordwrap	TRUE	TRUE or FALSE (boolean)	Enable word-wrap.
wrapchars	76		Character count to wrap at.
mailtype	text	text or html	Type of mail. If you send HTML email you must send it as a complete web page. Make sure you don't have any relative links or relative image paths otherwise they will not work.
charset	utf-8		Character set (utf-8, iso-8859-1, etc.).
validate	FALSE	TRUE or FALSE (boolean)	Whether to validate the email address.
priority	3	1, 2, 3, 4, 5	Email Priority. 1 = highest. 5 = lowest. 3 = normal.
newline	\n	"\r\n" or "\n"	Newline character. (Use "\r\n" to comply with RFC 822).
bcc_batch_mode	FALSE	TRUE or FALSE (boolean)	Enable BCC Batch Mode.
bcc_batch_size	200	None	Number of emails in each BCC batch.

Email Function Reference

`$this->email->from()`

Sets the email address and name of the person sending the email:

```
$this->email->from('you@your-site.com', 'Your Name');
```

\$this->email->reply_to()

Sets the reply-to address. If the information is not provided the information in the "from" function is used. Example:

```
$this->email->reply_to('you@your-site.com', 'Your Name');
```

\$this->email->to()

Sets the email address(s) of the recipient(s). Can be a single email, a comma-delimited list or an array:

```
$this->email->to('someone@example.com');
```

```
$this->email->to('one@example.com, two@example.com, three@example.com');
```

```
$list = array('one@example.com', 'two@example.com', 'three@example.com');  
  
$this->email->to($list);
```

\$this->email->cc()

Sets the CC email address(s). Just like the "to", can be a single email, a comma-delimited list or an array.

\$this->email->bcc()

Sets the BCC email address(s). Just like the "to", can be a single email, a comma-delimited list or an array.

\$this->email->subject()

Sets the email subject:

```
$this->email->subject('This is my subject');
```

`$this->email->message()`

Sets the email message body:

```
$this->email->message('This is my message');
```

`$this->email->set_alt_message()`

Sets the alternative email message body:

```
$this->email->set_alt_message('This is the alternative message');
```

This is an optional message string which can be used if you send HTML formatted email. It lets you specify an alternative message with no HTML formatting which is added to the header string for people who do not accept HTML email. If you do not set your own message CodeIgniter will extract the message from your HTML email and strip the tags.

`$this->email->clear()`

Initializes all the email variables to an empty state. This function is intended for use if you run the email sending function in a loop, permitting the data to be reset between cycles.

```
foreach ($list as $name => $address)
{
    $this->email->clear();

    $this->email->to($address);
    $this->email->from('your@your-site.com');
    $this->email->subject('Here is your info '.$name);
    $this->email->message('Hi '.$name.' Here is the info you requested.');
```

If you set the parameter to TRUE any attachments will be cleared as well:

```
$this->email->clear(TRUE);
```


`$this->email->send()`

The Email sending function. Returns boolean TRUE or FALSE based on success or failure, enabling it to be used conditionally:

```
if ( ! $this->email->send())
{
    // Generate error
}
```

`$this->email->attach()`

Enables you to send an attachment. Put the file path/name in the first parameter. Note: Use a file path, not a URL. For multiple attachments use the function multiple times. For example:

```
$this->email->attach('/path/to/photo1.jpg');
$this->email->attach('/path/to/photo2.jpg');
$this->email->attach('/path/to/photo3.jpg');

$this->email->send();
```

`$this->email->print_debugger()`

Returns a string containing any server messages, the email headers, and the email message. Useful for debugging.

Overriding Word Wrapping

If you have word wrapping enabled (recommended to comply with RFC 822) and you have a very long link in your email it can get wrapped too, causing it to become un-clickable by the person receiving it. CodeIgniter lets you manually override word wrapping within part of your message like this:

The text of your email that gets wrapped normally.

```
{unwrap}http://www.example.com/
a_long_link_that_should_not_be_wrapped.html{/unwrap}
```

More text that will be wrapped normally.

Place the item you do not want word-wrapped between: **{unwrap}**
{/unwrap}

Previous Topic: [Database Class](#) · [Top of Page](#) · [User Guide Home](#) · Next Topic: [Encryption Class](#)

[CodeIgniter](#) · Copyright © 2007 · [Ellislab, Inc.](#)

Calendaring Class

The Calendar class enables you to dynamically create calendars. Your calendars can be formatted through the use of a calendar template, allowing 100% control over every aspect of its design. In addition, you can pass data to your calendar cells.

Initializing the Class

Like most other classes in CodeIgniter, the Calendar class is initialized in your controller using the **`$this->load->library`** function:

```
$this->load->library('calendar');
```

Once loaded, the Calendar object will be available using: **`$this->calendar`**

Displaying a Calendar

Here is a very simple example showing how you can display a calendar:

```
$this->load->library('calendar');  
  
echo $this->calendar->generate();
```

The above code will generate a calendar for the current month/year based on your server time. To show a calendar for a specific month and year you will pass this information to the calendar generating function:

```
$this->load->library('calendar');  
  
echo $this->calendar->generate(2006, 6);
```

The above code will generate a calendar showing the month of June in 2006. The first parameter specifies the year, the second parameter specifies the month.

Passing Data to your Calendar Cells

To add data to your calendar cells involves creating an associative array in which the keys correspond to the days you wish to populate and the array value contains the data. The array is passed to the third parameter of the calendar generating function. Consider this example:

```
$this->load->library('calendar');

$data = array(
    3 => 'http://your-site.com/news/article/2006/03/',
    7 => 'http://your-site.com/news/article/2006/07/',
    13 => 'http://your-site.com/news/article/2006/13/',
    26 => 'http://your-site.com/news/article/2006/26/'
);

echo $this->calendar->generate(2006, 6, $data);
```

Using the above example, day numbers 3, 7, 13, and 26 will become links pointing to the URLs you've provided.

Note: By default it is assumed that your array will contain links. In the section that explains the calendar template below you'll see how you can customize how data passed to your cells is handled so you can pass different types of information.

Setting Display Preferences

There are seven preferences you can set to control various aspects of the calendar. Preferences are set by passing an array of preferences in the second parameter of the loading function. Here is an example:

```
$prefs = array (
```

```

        'start_day'    => 'saturday',
        'month_type'   => 'long',
        'day_type'     => 'short'
    );

    $this->load->library('calendar', $prefs);

    echo $this->calendar->generate();

```

The above code would start the calendar on saturday, use the "long" month heading, and the "short" day names. More information regarding preferences below.

Preference	Default Value	Options	Description
template	None	None	A string containing your calendar template. See the template section below.
local_time	time()	None	A Unix timestamp corresponding to the current time.
start_day	sunday	Any week day (sunday, monday, tuesday, etc.)	Sets the day of the week the calendar should start on.
month_type	long	long, short	Determines what version of the month name to use in the header. long = January, short = Jan.
day_type	abr	long, short, abr	Determines what version of the weekday names to use in the column headers. long = Sunday, short = Sun, abr = Su.
show_next_prev	FALSE	TRUE/FALSE (boolean)	Determines whether to display links allowing you to toggle to next/previous months. See information on this feature below.
next_prev_url	None	A URL	Sets the basepath used in the next/previous calendar links.

Showing Next/Previous Month Links

To allow your calendar to dynamically increment/decrement via the next/previous links requires that you set up your calendar code similar to this example:

```

$prefs = array (
    'show_next_prev' => TRUE,
    'next_prev_url' => 'http://www.your-site.com/index.php/calendar/
show/'
);

$this->load->library('calendar', $prefs);

echo $this->calendar->generate($this->uri->segment(3), $this->uri-
>segment(4));

```

You'll notice a few things about the above example:

- You must set the "show_next_prev" to TRUE.
- You must supply the URL to the controller containing your calendar in the "next_prev_url" preference.
- You must supply the "year" and "month" to the calendar generating function via the URI segments where they appear (Note: The calendar class automatically adds the year/month to the base URL you provide.).

Creating a Calendar Template

By creating a calendar template you have 100% control over the design of your calendar. Each component of your calendar will be placed within a pair of pseudo-variables as shown here:

```

$prefs['template'] = '

{table_open} <table border="0" cellpadding="0" cellspacing="0">{ /
table_open}

{heading_row_start} <tr>{ /heading_row_start}

{heading_previous_cell} <th><a href="{previous_url}">&lt;&lt;< /
a>< /th>{ /heading_previous_cell}
{heading_title_cell} <th colspan="{colspan}">{heading} < /th>{ /
heading_title_cell}
{heading_next_cell} <th><a href="{next_url}">&gt;&gt;< /a>< /th>
{ /heading_next_cell}

{heading_row_end} < /tr>{ /heading_row_end}

{week_row_start} <tr>{ /week_row_start}

```

```

{week_day_cell}<td>{week_day}</td>{/week_day_cell}
{week_row_end}</tr>{/week_row_end}

{cal_row_start}<tr>{/cal_row_start}
{cal_cell_start}<td>{/cal_cell_start}

{cal_cell_content}<a href="{content}">{day}</a>{/
cal_cell_content}
{cal_cell_content_today}<div class="highlight"><a
href="{content}">{day}</a></div>{/cal_cell_content_today}

{cal_cell_no_content}{day}{/cal_cell_no_content}
{cal_cell_no_content_today}<div class="highlight">{day}</div>{/
cal_cell_no_content_today}

{cal_cell_blank}&nbsp;{/cal_cell_blank}

{cal_cell_end}</td>{/cal_cell_end}
{cal_row_end}</tr>{/cal_row_end}

{table_close}</table>{/table_close}
';

$this->load->library('calendar', $prefs);

echo $this->calendar->generate();

```

[Previous Topic: Benchmarking Class](#) ·
 [Top of Page](#) ·
 [User Guide Home](#) ·
 [Next Topic: Config Class](#)

[CodeIgniter](#) ·
 Copyright © 2007 ·
 [Ellislab, Inc.](#)

Creating Core System Classes

Every time CodeIgniter runs there are several base classes that are initialized automatically as part of the core framework. It is possible, however, to swap any of the core system classes with your own versions or even extend the core versions.

Most users will never have any need to do this, but the option to replace or extend them does exist for those who would like to significantly alter the CodeIgniter core.

Note: Messing with a core system class has a lot of implications, so make sure you know what you are doing before attempting it.

System Class List

The following is a list of the core system files that are invoked every time CodeIgniter runs:

- Benchmark
- Input
- Config
- Hooks
- Router
- URI
- Language
- Loader
- Controller
- Output

Replacing Core Classes

To use one of your own system classes instead of a default one simply place your version inside your local **application/libraries** directory:

```
application/libraries/some-class.php
```


If this directory does not exist you can create it.

Any file named identically to one from the list above will be used instead of the one normally used.

Please note that your class must use **CI** as a prefix. For example, if your file is named **Input.php** the class will be named:

```
class CI_Input {
}
```

Extending Core Class

If all you need to do is add some functionality to an existing library - perhaps add a function or two - then it's overkill to replace the entire library with your version. In this case it's better to simply extend the class. Extending a class is nearly identical to replacing a class with a couple exceptions:

- The class declaration must extend the parent class.
- Your new class name and filename must be prefixed with **MY_** (this item is configurable. See below.).

For example, to extend the native **Input** class you'll create a file named **application/libraries/MY_Input.php**, and declare your class with:

```
class MY_Input extends CI_Input {
}
```

Note: If you need to use a constructor in your class make sure you extend the parent constructor:

```
class MY_Input extends CI_Input {
    function My_Input()
    {
        parent::CI_Input();
    }
}
```

Tip: Any functions in your class that are named identically to the functions in the parent class will be used instead of the native ones (this is known as "method overriding"). This allows you to substantially alter the CodeIgniter core.

Setting Your Own Prefix

To set your own sub-class prefix, open your **application/config/config.php** file and look for this item:

```
$config['subclass_prefix'] = 'MY_';
```

Please note that all native CodeIgniter libraries are prefixed with **CI_** so DO NOT use that as your prefix.

Previous Topic: [Creating Your Own Libraries](#) · [Top of Page](#) · [User Guide Home](#) · Next Topic: [Hooks - Extending the Core](#)

[CodeIgniter](#) · Copyright © 2007 · [Ellislab, Inc.](#)

Using CodeIgniter Libraries

All of the available libraries are located in your **system/libraries** folder. In most cases, to use one of these classes involves initializing it within a **controller** using the following initialization function:

```
$this->load->library('class name');
```

Where **class name** is the name of the class you want to invoke. For example, to load the validation class you would do this:

```
$this->load->library('validation');
```

Once initialized you can use it as indicated in the user guide page corresponding to that class.

Creating Your Own Libraries

Please read the section of the user guide that discusses how to [create your own libraries](#)

Previous Topic: [Plugins](#) · [Top of Page](#) · [User Guide Home](#) · Next Topic: [Creating Libraries](#)

[CodeIgniter](#) · Copyright © 2007 · [Ellislab, Inc.](#)

Encryption Class

The Encryption Class provides two-way data encryption. It uses a scheme that pre-compiles the message using a randomly hashed bitwise XOR encoding scheme, which is then encrypted using the Mcrypt library. If Mcrypt is not available on your server the encoded message will still provide a reasonable degree of security for encrypted sessions or other such "light" purposes. If Mcrypt is available, you'll effectively end up with a double-encrypted message string, which should provide a very high degree of security.

Setting your Key

A *key* is a piece of information that controls the cryptographic process and permits an encrypted string to be decoded. In fact, the key you chose will provide the **only** means to decode data that was encrypted with that key, so not only must you chose the key carefully, you must never change it if you intend use it for persistent data.

It goes without saying that you should guard your key carefully. Should someone gain access to your key, the data will be easily decoded. If your server is not totally under your control it's impossible to ensure key security so you may want to think carefully before using it for anything that requires high security, like storing credit card numbers.

To take maximum advantage of the encryption algorithm, your key should be 32 characters in length (128 bits). The key should be as random a string as you can concoct, with numbers and uppercase and lowercase letters. Your key should **not** be a simple text string. In order to be cryptographically secure it needs to be as random as possible.

Your key can be either stored in your **application/config/config.php**, or you can design your own storage mechanism and pass the key dynamically when encoding/decoding.

To save your key to your **application/config/config.php**, open the file and set:

```
$config['encryption_key'] = "YOUR KEY";
```

Message Length

It's important for you to know that the encoded messages the encryption function generates will be approximately 2.6 times longer than the original message. For example, if you encrypt the string "my super secret data", which is 21 characters in length, you'll end up with an encoded string that is roughly 55 characters (we say "roughly" because the encoded string length increments in 64 bit clusters, so it's not exactly linear). Keep this information in mind when selecting your data storage mechanism. Cookies, for example, can only hold 4K of information.

Initializing the Class

Like most other classes in CodeIgniter, the Encryption class is initialized in your controller using the **\$this->load->library** function:

```
$this->load->library('encrypt');
```

Once loaded, the Encrypt library object will be available using: **\$this->encrypt**

\$this->encrypt->encode()

Performs the data encryption and returns it as a string. Example:

```
$msg = 'My secret message';  
  
$encrypted_string = $this->encrypt->encode($msg);
```

You can optionally pass your encryption key via the second parameter if you don't want to use the one in your config file:

```
$msg = 'My secret message';
$key = 'super-secret-key';

$encrypted_string = $this->encrypt->encode($msg, $key);
```

`$this->encrypt->decode()`

Decrypts an encoded string. Example:

```
$encrypted_string = 'APANtBylGI1BpVXZTJgcsAG8GZI8pdwwa84';
$plaintext_string = $this->encrypt->decode($encrypted_string);
```

`$this->encrypt->set_cipher()`

Permits you to set an Mcrypt cipher. By default it uses **MCRYPT_RIJNDAEL_256**. Example:

```
$this->encrypt->set_cipher(MCRYPT_BLOWFISH);
```

Please visit php.net for a list of [available ciphers](#).

If you'd like to manually test whether your server supports Mcrypt you can use:

```
echo ( ! function_exists('mcrypt_encrypt')) ? 'Nope' : 'Yup';
```

`$this->encrypt->set_mode()`

Permits you to set an Mcrypt mode. By default it uses **MCRYPT_MODE_ECB**. Example:

```
$this->encrypt->set_mode(MCRYPT_MODE_CFB);
```

Please visit php.net for a list of [available modes](#).

`$this->encrypt->sha1()`;

SHA1 encoding function. Provide a string and it will return a 160 bit one way hash. Note: SHA1, just like MD5 is non-decodable.

Example:

```
$hash = $this->encrypt->sha1('Some string');
```

Many PHP installations have SHA1 support by default so if all you need is to encode a hash it's simpler to use the native function:

```
$hash = sha1('Some string');
```

If your server does not support SHA1 you can use the provided function.

Previous Topic: [Email Class](#) · [Top of Page](#) · [User Guide Home](#) · Next Topic: [File Uploading Class](#)

[CodeIgniter](#) · Copyright © 2007 · [Ellislab, Inc.](#)

Date Helper

The Date Helper file contains functions that help you work with dates.

Loading this Helper

This helper is loaded using the following code:

```
$this->load->helper('date');
```

The following functions are available:

now()

Returns the current time as a Unix timestamp, referenced either to your server's local time or GMT, based on the "time reference" setting in your config file. If you do not intend to set your master time reference to GMT (which you'll typically do if you run a site that lets each user set their own timezone settings) there is no benefit to using this function over PHP's `time()` function.

mdate()

This function is identical to PHP's `date()` function, except that it lets you use MySQL style date codes, where each code letter is preceded with a percent sign: `%Y %m %d` etc.

The benefit of doing dates this way is that you don't have to worry about escaping any characters that are not date codes, as you would normally have to do with the `date()` function. Example:

```
$datestring = "Year: %Y Month: %m Day: %d - %h:%i %a";  
$time = time();
```



```
echo mdate($datestring, $time);
```

If a timestamp is not included in the second parameter the current time will be used.

standard_date()

Lets you generate a date string in one of several standardized formats. Example:

```
$format = 'DATE_RFC822';  
$time = time();  
  
echo standard_date($format, $time);
```

The first parameter must contain the format, the second parameter must contain the date as a Unix timestamp.

Supported formats:

- DATE_ATOM
- DATE_COOKIE
- DATE_ISO8601
- DATE_RFC822
- DATE_RFC850
- DATE_RFC1036
- DATE_RFC1123
- DATE_RFC2822
- DATE_RSS
- DATE_W3C

local_to_gmt()

Takes a Unix timestamp as input and returns it as GMT. Example:

```
$now = time();
```

```
$gmt = local_to_gmt($now);
```

gmt_to_local()

Takes a Unix timestamp (referenced to GMT) as input, and converts it to a localized timestamp based on the timezone and Daylight Saving time submitted. Example:

```
$timestamp = '1140153693';
$timezone = 'UM8';
$daylight_saving = TRUE;

echo gmt_to_local($timestamp, $timezone, $daylight_saving);
```

Note: For a list of timezones see the reference at the bottom of this page.

mysql_to_unix()

Takes a MySQL Timestamp as input and returns it as Unix. Example:

```
$mysql = '20061124092345';
$unix = mysql_to_unix($mysql);
```

unix_to_human()

Takes a Unix timestamp as input and returns it in a human readable format with this prototype:

```
YYYY-MM-DD HH:MM:SS AM/PM
```

This can be useful if you need to display a date in a form field for submission.

The time can be formatted with or without seconds, and it can be set to European or US format. If only the timestamp is submitted it will return the time without seconds formatted for the U.S.

Examples:

```
$now = time();

echo unix_to_human($now); // U.S. time, no seconds

echo unix_to_human($now, TRUE, 'us'); // U.S. time with seconds

echo unix_to_human($now, TRUE, 'eu'); // Euro time with seconds
```

human_to_unix()

The opposite of the above function. Takes a "human" time as input and returns it as Unix. This function is useful if you accept "human" formatted dates submitted via a form. Returns FALSE (boolean) if the date string passed to it is not formatted as indicated above.

Example:

```
$now = time();

$human = unix_to_human($now);

$unix = human_to_unix($human);
```

timespan()

Formats a unix timestamp so that it appears similar to this:

```
1 Year, 10 Months, 2 Weeks, 5 Days, 10 Hours, 16 Minutes
```

The first parameter must contain a Unix timestamp. The second parameter must contain a timestamp that is greater than the first timestamp. If the second parameter is empty, the current time will be used. The most common purpose for this function is to show how much time has elapsed from some point in time in the past to now.

Example:

```
$post_date = '1079621429';
$now = time();
```

```
echo timespan($post_date, $now);
```

Note: The text generated by this function is found in the following language file: language/<your_lang>/date_lang.php

days_in_month()

Returns the number of days in a given month/year. Takes leap years into account. Example:

```
echo days_in_month(06, 2005);
```

If the second parameter is empty, the current year will be used.

timezones()

Takes a timezone reference (for a list of valid timezones, see the "Timezone Reference" below) and returns the number of hours offset from UTC.

```
echo timezones('UM5');
```

This function is useful when used with `timezone_menu()`.

timezone_menu()

Generates a pull-down menu of timezones, like this one:

This menu is useful if you run a membership site in which your users are allowed to set their local timezone value.

The first parameter lets you set the "selected" state of the menu. For example, to set Pacific time as the default you will do this:

```
echo timezone_menu('UM8');
```

Please see the timezone reference below to see the values of this menu.

The second parameter lets you set a CSS class name for the menu.

Note: The text contained in the menu is found in the following language file: language/<your_lang>/date_lang.php

Timezone Reference

The following table indicates each timezone and its location.

Time Zone	Location
UM12	(UTC - 12:00) Enitwetok, Kwajalien
UM11	(UTC - 11:00) Nome, Midway Island, Samoa
UM10	(UTC - 10:00) Hawaii
UM9	(UTC - 9:00) Alaska
UM8	(UTC - 8:00) Pacific Time
UM7	(UTC - 7:00) Mountain Time
UM6	(UTC - 6:00) Central Time, Mexico City
UM5	(UTC - 5:00) Eastern Time, Bogota, Lima, Quito
UM4	(UTC - 4:00) Atlantic Time, Caracas, La Paz
UM25	(UTC - 3:30) Newfoundland
UM3	(UTC - 3:00) Brazil, Buenos Aires, Georgetown, Falkland Is.
UM2	(UTC - 2:00) Mid-Atlantic, Ascension Is., St Helena
UM1	(UTC - 1:00) Azores, Cape Verde Islands
UTC	(UTC) Casablanca, Dublin, Edinburgh, London, Lisbon, Monrovia
UP1	(UTC + 1:00) Berlin, Brussels, Copenhagen, Madrid, Paris, Rome
UP2	(UTC + 2:00) Kaliningrad, South Africa, Warsaw
UP3	(UTC + 3:00) Baghdad, Riyadh, Moscow, Nairobi
UP25	(UTC + 3:30) Tehran
UP4	(UTC + 4:00) Adu Dhabi, Baku, Muscat, Tbilisi
UP35	(UTC + 4:30) Kabul
UP5	(UTC + 5:00) Islamabad, Karachi, Tashkent
UP45	(UTC + 5:30) Bombay, Calcutta, Madras, New Delhi
UP6	(UTC + 6:00) Almaty, Colomba, Dhakra
UP7	(UTC + 7:00) Bangkok, Hanoi, Jakarta
UP8	(UTC + 8:00) Beijing, Hong Kong, Perth, Singapore, Taipei
UP9	(UTC + 9:00) Osaka, Sapporo, Seoul, Tokyo, Yakutsk
UP85	(UTC + 9:30) Adelaide, Darwin
UP10	(UTC + 10:00) Melbourne, Papua New Guinea, Sydney, Vladivostok
UP11	(UTC + 11:00) Magadan, New Caledonia, Solomon Islands
UP12	(UTC + 12:00) Auckland, Wellington, Fiji, Marshall Island

Previous Topic: [Cookie Helper](#) · [Top of Page](#) · [User Guide Home](#) · Next Topic: [Directory Helper](#)

[CodeIgniter](#) · Copyright © 2007 · [Ellislab, Inc.](#)

Form Helper

The Form Helper file contains functions that assist in working with forms.

Loading this Helper

This helper is loaded using the following code:

```
$this->load->helper('form');
```

The following functions are available:

form_open()

Creates an opening form tag with a base URL **built from your config preferences**. It will optionally let you add form attributes and hidden input fields.

The main benefit of using this tag rather than hard coding your own HTML is that it permits your site to be more portable in the event your URLs ever change.

Here's a simple example:

```
echo form_open('email/send');
```

The above example would create a form that points to your base URL plus the "email/send" URI segments, like this:

```
<form method="post" action="http://www.your-site.com/index.php/email/send" />
```

Adding Attributes

Attributes can be added by passing an associative array to the second parameter, like this:

```
$attributes = array('class' => 'email', 'id' => 'myform');

echo form_open('email/send', $attributes);
```

The above example would create a form similar to this:

```
<form method="post" action="http://www.your-site.com/index.php/email/
send" class="email" id="myform" />
```

Adding Hidden Input Fields

Hidden fields can be added by passing an associative array to the third parameter, like this:

```
$hidden = array('username' => 'Joe', 'member_id' => '234');

echo form_open('email/send', "", $hidden);
```

The above example would create a form similar to this:

```
<form method="post" action="http://www.your-site.com/index.php/email/
send" class="email" id="myform" />
<input type="hidden" name="username" value="Joe" />
<input type="hidden" name="member_id" value="234" />
```

form_open_multipart()

This function is absolutely identical to the **form_open()** tag above except that it adds a multipart attribute, which is necessary if you would like to use the form to upload files with.

form_hidden()

Lets you generate hidden input fields. You can either submit a name/

value string to create one field:

```
form_hidden('username', 'johndoe');

// Would produce:

<input type="hidden" name="username" value="johndoe" />
```

Or you can submit an associative array to create multiple fields:

```
$data = array(
    'name' => 'John Doe',
    'email' => 'john@example.com',
    'url' => 'http://www.example.com'
);

echo form_hidden($data);

// Would produce:

<input type="hidden" name="name" value="John Doe" />
<input type="hidden" name="email" value="john@example.com" />
<input type="hidden" name="url" value="http://www.example.com" />
```

form_input()

Lets you generate a standard text input field. You can minimally pass the field name and value in the first and second parameter:

```
echo form_input('username', 'johndoe');
```

Or you can pass an associative array containing any data you wish your form to contain:

```
$data = array(
    'name' => 'username',
    'id' => 'username',
    'value' => 'johndoe',
    'maxlength' => '100',
    'size' => '50',
    'style' => 'width:50%',
);
```

```
echo form_input($data);

// Would produce:

<input type="text" name="username" id="username" value="johndoe"
maxlength="100" size="50" style="width:50%" />
```

If you would like your form to contain some additional data, like JavaScript, you can pass it as a string in the third parameter:

```
$js = 'onClick="some_function()";'

echo form_input('username', 'johndoe', $js);
```

form_password()

This function is identical in all respects to the **form_input()** function above except that it sets it as a "password" type.

form_upload()

This function is identical in all respects to the **form_input()** function above except that it sets it as a "file" type, allowing it to be used to upload files.

form_textarea()

This function is identical in all respects to the **form_input()** function above except that it generates a "textarea" type. Note: Instead of the "maxlength" and "size" attributes in the above example, you will instead specify "rows" and "cols".

form_dropdown()

Lets you create a standard drop-down field. The first parameter will contain the name of the field, the second parameter will contain an associative array of options, and the third parameter will contain the value you wish to be selected. Example:

```
$options = array(
    'small' => 'Small Shirt',
    'med'   => 'Medium Shirt',
    'large' => 'Large Shirt',
    'xlarge' => 'Extra Large Shirt',
);

echo form_dropdown('shirts', $options, 'large');

// Would produce:

<select name="shirts">
<option value="small">Small Shirt</option>
<option value="med">Medium Shirt</option>
<option value="large" selected>Large Shirt</option>
<option value="xlarge">Extra Large Shirt</option>
</select>
```

If you would like the opening `<select>` to contain additional data, like JavaScript, you can pass it as a string in the fourth parameter:

```
$js = 'onChange="some_function()";'

echo form_dropdown('shirts', $options, 'large', $js);
```

form_checkbox()

Lets you generate a checkbox field. Simple example:

```
echo form_checkbox('newsletter', 'accept', TRUE);

// Would produce:

<input type="checkbox" name="newsletter" value="accept"
checked="checked" />
```

The third parameter contains a boolean TRUE/FALSE to determine whether the box should be checked or not.

Similar to the other form functions in this helper, you can also pass an array of attributes to the function:

```
$data = array(
    'name'      => 'newsletter',
```

```
'id'      => 'newsletter',
'value'    => 'accept',
'checked'  => TRUE,
'style'    => 'margin: 10px',
);
```

```
echo form_checkbox($data);
```

```
// Would produce:
```

```
<input type="checkbox" name="newsletter" id="newsletter" value="accept"
checked="checked" style="margin: 10px" />
```

As with other functions, if you would like the tag to contain additional data, like JavaScript, you can pass it as a string in the fourth parameter:

```
$js = 'onClick="some_function()";
```

```
echo form_checkbox('newsletter', 'accept', TRUE, $js)
```

form_radio()

This function is identical in all respects to the **form_checkbox()** function above except that it sets it as a "radio" type.

form_submit()

Lets you generate a standard submit button. Simple example:

```
echo form_submit('mysubmit', 'Submit Post!');
```

```
// Would produce:
```

```
<input type="submit" name="mysubmit" value="Submit Post!" />
```

Similar to other functions, you can submit an associative array in the first parameter if you prefer to set your own attributes. The third parameter lets you add extra data to your form, like JavaScript.

form_reset()

Lets you generate a standard reset button. Use is identical to `form_submit()`.

`form_close()`

Produces a closing `</form>` tag. The only advantage to using this function is it permits you to pass data to it which will be added below the tag. For example:

```
$string = "</div></div>";  
echo form_close($string);  
  
// Would produce:  
  
</form>  
</div></div>
```

`form_prep()`

Allows you to safely use HTML and characters such as quotes within form elements without breaking out of the form. Consider this example:

```
$string = 'Here is a string containing "quoted" text.';  
<input type="text" name="myform" value="$string" />
```

Since the above string contains a set of quotes it will cause the form to break. The `form_prep` function converts HTML so that it can be used safely:

```
<input type="text" name="myform" value="<?php echo form_prep  
($string); ?>" />
```

Note: If you use any of the form helper functions listed in this page the form values will be prepped automatically, so there is no need to call this function. Use it only if you are creating your own form elements.

Previous Topic: [File Helper](#) · [Top of Page](#) · [User Guide Home](#) · Next Topic: [HTML Helper](#)

[CodeIgniter](#) · Copyright © 2007 · [Ellislab, Inc.](#)

Inflector Helper

The Inflector Helper file contains functions that permits you to change words to plural, singular, camel case, etc.

Loading this Helper

This helper is loaded using the following code:

```
$this->load->helper('inflector');
```

The following functions are available:

singular()

Changes a plural word to singular. Example:

```
$word = "dogs";  
echo singular($word); // Returns "dog"
```

plural()

Changes a singular word to plural. Example:

```
$word = "dog";  
echo plural($word); // Returns "dogs"
```

To force a word to end with "es" use a second "true" argument.

```
$word = "pass";  
echo plural($word, TRUE); // Returns "passes"
```

camelize()

Changes a string of words separated by spaces or underscores to camel case. Example:

```
$word = "my_dog_spot";  
echo camelize($word); // Returns "myDogSpot"
```

underscore()

Takes multiple words separated by spaces and underscores them. Example:

```
$word = "my dog spot";  
echo underscore($word); // Returns "my_dog_spot"
```

humanize()

Takes multiple words separated by underscores and adds spaces between them. Each word is capitalized. Example:

```
$word = "my_dog_spot";  
echo humanize($word); // Returns "My Dog Spot"
```

Previous Topic: [HTML Helper](#) · [Top of Page](#) · [User Guide Home](#) · Next Topic: [Security Helper](#)

[CodeIgniter](#) · Copyright © 2007 · [Ellislab, Inc.](#)

HTML Table Class

The Table Class provides functions that enable you to auto-generate HTML tables from arrays or database result sets.

Initializing the Class

Like most other classes in CodeIgniter, the Table class is initialized in your controller using the **`$this->load->library`** function:

```
$this->load->library('table');
```

Once loaded, the Table library object will be available using: **`$this->table`**

Examples

Here is an example showing how you can create a table from a multi-dimensional array. Note that the first array index will become the table heading (or you can set your own headings using the **`set_heading()`** function described in the function reference below).

```
$this->load->library('table');

$data = array(
    array('Name', 'Color', 'Size'),
    array('Fred', 'Blue', 'Small'),
    array('Mary', 'Red', 'Large'),
    array('John', 'Green', 'Medium')
);

echo $this->table->generate($data);
```

Here is an example of a table created from a database query result. The table class will automatically generate the headings based on the table names (or you can set your own headings using the

set_heading() function described in the function reference below).

```
$this->load->library('table');

$query = $this->db->query("SELECT * FROM my_table");

echo $this->table->generate($query);
```

Here is an example showing how you might create a table using discreet parameters:

```
$this->load->library('table');

$this->table->set_heading('Name', 'Color', 'Size');

$this->table->add_row('Fred', 'Blue', 'Small');
$this->table->add_row('Mary', 'Red', 'Large');
$this->table->add_row('John', 'Green', 'Medium');

echo $this->table->generate();
```

Here is the same example, except instead of individual parameters, arrays are used:

```
$this->load->library('table');

$this->table->set_heading(array('Name', 'Color', 'Size'));

$this->table->add_row(array('Fred', 'Blue', 'Small'));
$this->table->add_row(array('Mary', 'Red', 'Large'));
$this->table->add_row(array('John', 'Green', 'Medium'));

echo $this->table->generate();
```

Changing the Look of Your Table

The Table Class permits you to set a table template with which you can specify the design of your layout. Here is the template prototype:

```
$tmpl = array (
    'table_open'          => '<table border="0" cellpadding="4"
    cellspacing="0">',
```

```

        'heading_row_start' => '<tr>',
        'heading_row_end'   => '</tr>',
        'heading_cell_start' => '<th>',
        'heading_cell_end'   => '</th>',

        'row_start'         => '<tr>',
        'row_end'           => '</tr>',
        'cell_start'        => '<td>',
        'cell_end'          => '</td>',

        'row_alt_start'     => '<tr>',
        'row_alt_end'       => '</tr>',
        'cell_alt_start'    => '<td>',
        'cell_alt_end'      => '</td>',

        'table_close'       => '</table>'
    );

```

```
$this->table->set_template($tmpl);
```

Note: You'll notice there are two sets of "row" blocks in the template. These permit you to create alternating row colors or design elements that alternate with each iteration of the row data.

You are NOT required to submit a complete template. If you only need to change parts of the layout you can simply submit those elements. In this example, only the table opening tag is being changed:

```

$tmpl = array ( 'table_open' => '<table border="1" cellpadding="2"
cellspacing="1" class="mytable">' );

$this->table->set_template($tmpl);

```

Function Reference

`$this->table->generate()`

Returns a string containing the generated table. Accepts an optional parameter which can be an array or a database result object.

`$this->table->set_caption()`

Permits you to add a caption to the table.

```
$this->table->set_caption('Colors');
```

`$this->table->set_heading()`

Permits you to set the table heading. You can submit an array or discreet params:

```
$this->table->set_heading('Name', 'Color', 'Size');
```

```
$this->table->set_heading(array('Name', 'Color', 'Size'));
```

`$this->table->add_row()`

Permits you to add a row to your table. You can submit an array or discreet params:

```
$this->table->add_row('Blue', 'Red', 'Green');
```

```
$this->table->add_row(array('Blue', 'Red', 'Green'));
```

`$this->table->make_columns()`

This function takes a one-dimensional array as input and creates a multi-dimensional array with a depth equal to the number of columns desired. This allows a single array with many elements to be displayed in a table that has a fixed column count. Consider this example:

```
$list = array('one', 'two', 'three', 'four', 'five', 'six', 'seven', 'eight', 'nine', 'ten',
```

```
'eleven', 'twelve');

$new_list = $this->table->make_columns($list, 3);

$this->table->generate($new_list);

// Generates a table with this prototype

<table border="0" cellpadding="4" cellspacing="0">
<tr>
<td>one</td><td>two</td><td>three</td>
</tr><tr>
<td>four</td><td>five</td><td>six</td>
</tr><tr>
<td>seven</td><td>eight</td><td>nine</td>
</tr><tr>
<td>ten</td><td>eleven</td><td>twelve</td></tr>
</table>
```

`$this->table->set_template()`

Permits you to set your template. You can submit a full or partial template.

```
$tmpl = array ( 'table_open' => '<table border="1" cellpadding="2"
cellspacing="1" class="mytable">' );

$this->table->set_template($tmpl);
```

`$this->table->set_empty()`

Let's you set a default value for use in any table cells that are empty. You might, for example, set a non-breaking space:

```
$this->table->set_empty("&nbsp;");
```

`$this->table->clear()`

Lets you clear the table heading and row data. If you need to show multiple tables with different data you should to call this function after each table has been generated to empty the previous table

information. Example:

```
$this->load->library('table');

$this->table->set_heading('Name', 'Color', 'Size');
$this->table->add_row('Fred', 'Blue', 'Small');
$this->table->add_row('Mary', 'Red', 'Large');
$this->table->add_row('John', 'Green', 'Medium');

echo $this->table->generate();

$this->table->clear();

$this->table->set_heading('Name', 'Day', 'Delivery');
$this->table->add_row('Fred', 'Wednesday', 'Express');
$this->table->add_row('Mary', 'Monday', 'Air');
$this->table->add_row('John', 'Saturday', 'Overnight');

echo $this->table->generate();
```

Previous Topic: [FTP Class](#) · [Top of Page](#) · [User Guide Home](#) · Next Topic: [Image Manipulation Class](#)

[CodeIgniter](#) · Copyright © 2007 · [Ellislab, Inc.](#)

Download Helper

The Download Helper lets you download data to your desktop.

Loading this Helper

This helper is loaded using the following code:

```
$this->load->helper('download');
```

The following functions are available:

force_download('filename', 'data')

Generates server headers which force data to be downloaded to your desktop. Useful with file downloads. The first parameter is the **name you want the downloaded file to be named**, the second parameter is the file data. Example:

```
$data = 'Here is some text!';  
$name = 'mytext.txt';  
  
force_download($name, $data);
```

If you want to download an existing file from your server you'll need to read the file into a string:

```
$data = file_get_contents("/path/to/photo.jpg"); // Read the file's contents  
$name = 'myphoto.jpg';  
  
force_download($name, $data);
```


FTP Class

CodeIgniter's FTP Class permits files to be transferred to a remote server. Remote files can also be moved, renamed, and deleted. The FTP class also includes a "mirroring" function that permits an entire local directory to be recreated remotely via FTP.

Note: SFTP and SSL FTP protocols are not supported, only standard FTP.

Initializing the Class

Like most other classes in CodeIgniter, the FTP class is initialized in your controller using the **`$this->load->library`** function:

```
$this->load->library('ftp');
```

Once loaded, the FTP object will be available using: **`$this->ftp`**

Usage Examples

In this example a connection is opened to the FTP server, and a local file is read and uploaded in ASCII mode. The file permissions are set to 755. Note: Setting permissions requires PHP 5.

```
$this->load->library('ftp');

$config['hostname'] = 'ftp.your-site.com';
$config['username'] = 'your-username';
$config['password'] = 'your-password';
$config['debug'] = TRUE;

$this->ftp->connect($config);

$this->ftp->upload('/local/path/to/myfile.html', '/public_html/myfile.html',
'ascii', 0775);
```

```
$this->ftp->close();
```

In this example a list of files is retrieved from the server.

```
$this->load->library('ftp');

$config['hostname'] = 'ftp.your-site.com';
$config['username'] = 'your-username';
$config['password'] = 'your-password';
$config['debug'] = TRUE;

$this->ftp->connect($config);

$list = $this->ftp->list_files('/public_html/');

print_r($list);

$this->ftp->close();
```

In this example a local directory is mirrored on the server.

```
$this->load->library('ftp');

$config['hostname'] = 'ftp.your-site.com';
$config['username'] = 'your-username';
$config['password'] = 'your-password';
$config['debug'] = TRUE;

$this->ftp->connect($config);

$this->ftp->mirror('/path/to/myfolder/', '/public_html/myfolder/');

$this->ftp->close();
```

Function Reference

`$this->ftp->connect()`

Connects and logs into to the FTP server. Connection preferences are set by passing an array to the function, or you can store them in a config file.

Here is an example showing how you set preferences manually:

```
$this->load->library('ftp');

$config['hostname'] = 'ftp.your-site.com';
$config['username'] = 'your-username';
$config['password'] = 'your-password';
$config['port']     = 21;
$config['passive']  = FALSE;
$config['debug']    = TRUE;

$this->ftp->connect($config);
```

Setting FTP Preferences in a Config File

If you prefer you can store your FTP preferences in a config file. Simply create a new file called the **ftp.php**, add the **\$config** array in that file. Then save the file at **config/ftp.php** and it will be used automatically.

Available connection options:

- **hostname** - the FTP hostname. Usually something like: **ftp.example.com**
- **username** - the FTP username.
- **password** - the FTP password.
- **port** - The port number. Set to **21** by default.
- **debug** - **TRUE/FALSE** (boolean). Whether to enable debugging to display error messages.
- **passive** - **TRUE/FALSE** (boolean). Whether to use passive mode. Passive is set automatically by default.

\$this->ftp->upload()

Uploads a file to your server. You must supply the local path and the remote path, and you can optionally set the mode and permissions. Example:

```
$this->ftp->upload('/local/path/to/myfile.html', '/public_html/myfile.html',
'ascii', 0775);
```

Mode options are: **ascii**, **binary**, and **auto** (the default). If **auto** is used it will base the mode on the file extension of the source file.

Permissions are available if you are running PHP 5 and can be passed as an **octal** value in the fourth parameter.

`$this->ftp->rename()`

Permits you to rename a file. Supply the source file name/path and the new file name/path.

```
// Renames green.html to blue.html
$this->ftp->rename('/public_html/foo/green.html', '/public_html/foo/blue.html');
```

`$this->ftp->move()`

Lets you move a file. Supply the source and destination paths:

```
// Moves blog.html from "joe" to "fred"
$this->ftp->move('/public_html/joe/blog.html', '/public_html/fred/blog.html');
```

Note: if the destination file name is different the file will be renamed.

`$this->ftp->delete_file()`

Lets you delete a file. Supply the source path with the file name.

```
$this->ftp->delete_file('/public_html/joe/blog.html');
```

`$this->ftp->delete_dir()`

Lets you delete a directory and everything it contains. Supply the source path to the directory with a trailing slash.

Important Be VERY careful with this function. It will recursively

delete **everything** within the supplied path, including sub-folders and all files. Make absolutely sure your path is correct. Try using the **list_files()** function first to verify that your path is correct.

```
$this->ftp->delete_dir('/public_html/path/to/folder/');
```

`$this->ftp->list_files()`

Permits you to retrieve a list of files on your server returned as an **array**. You must supply the path to the desired directory.

```
$list = $this->ftp->list_files('/public_html/');  
print_r($list);
```

`$this->ftp->mirror()`

Recursively reads a local folder and everything it contains (including sub-folders) and creates a mirror via FTP based on it. Whatever the directory structure of the original file path will be recreated on the server. You must supply a source path and a destination path:

```
$this->ftp->mirror('/path/to/myfolder/', '/public_html/myfolder/');
```

`$this->ftp->mkdir()`

Lets you create a directory on your server. Supply the path ending in the folder name you wish to create, with a trailing slash. Permissions can be set by passed an **octal** value in the second parameter (if you are running PHP 5).

```
// Creates a folder named "bar"  
$this->ftp->mkdir('/public_html/foo/bar/', 0777);
```

`$this->ftp->chmod()`

Permits you to set file permissions. Supply the path to the file or folder you wish to alter permissions on:

```
// Chmod "bar" to 777  
$this->ftp->chmod('/public_html/foo/bar/', 0777);
```

`$this->ftp->close();`

Closes the connection to your server. It's recommended that you use this when you are finished uploading.

Previous Topic: [File Uploading Class](#) · [Top of Page](#) · [User Guide Home](#) · Next Topic: [HTML Table Class](#)

[CodeIgniter](#) · Copyright © 2007 · [Ellislab, Inc.](#)

Creating Libraries

When we use the term "Libraries" we are normally referring to the classes that are located in the **libraries** directory and described in the Class Reference of this user guide. In this case, however, we will instead describe how you can create your own libraries within your **application/libraries** directory in order to maintain separation between your local resources and the global framework resources.

As an added bonus, CodeIgniter permits your libraries to **extend** native classes if you simply need to add some functionality to an existing library. Or you can even replace native libraries just by placing identically named versions in your **application/libraries** folder.

In summary:

- You can create entirely new libraries.
- You can extend native libraries.
- You can replace native libraries.

The page below explains these three concepts in detail.

Note: The Database classes can not be extended or replaced with your own classes, nor can the main Controller class. All other classes are able to be replaced/extended.

Storage

Your library classes should be placed within your **application/libraries** folder, as this is where CodeIgniter will look for them when they are initialized.

Naming Conventions

- File names must be capitalized. For example: **Myclass.php**

- Class declarations must be capitalized. For example: **class Myclass**
- Class names and file names must match.

The Class File

Classes should have this basic prototype (Note: We are using the name **Someclass** purely as an example):

```
<?php if (!defined('BASEPATH')) exit('No direct script access allowed');

class Someclass {

    function some_function()
    {
    }

}

?>
```

Using Your Class

From within any of your [Controller](#) functions you can initialize your class using the standard:

```
$this->load->library('someclass');
```

Where *someclass* is the file name, without the ".php" file extension. You can submit the file name capitalized or lower case. CodeIgniter doesn't care.

Once loaded you can access your class using the **lower case** version:

```
$this->someclass->some_function(); // Object instances will always be lower case
```

Passing Parameters When Initializing Your Class

In the library loading function you can dynamically pass data via the

second parameter and it will be passed to your class constructor:

```
$params = array('type' => 'large', 'color' => 'red');
$this->load->library('Someclass', $params);
```

If you use this feature you must set up your class constructor to expect data:

```
<?php if (!defined('BASEPATH')) exit('No direct script access allowed');

class Someclass {

    function Someclass($params)
    {
        // Do something with $params
    }
}

?>
```

You can also pass parameters stored in a config file. Simply create a config file named identically to the class **file name** and store it in your **application/config/** folder. Note that if you dynamically pass parameters as described above, the config file option will not be available.

Utilizing CodeIgniter Resources within Your Library

To access CodeIgniter's native resources within your library use the **get_instance()** function. This function returns the CodeIgniter super object.

Normally from within your controller functions you will call any of the available CodeIgniter functions using the **\$this** construct:

```
$this->load->helper('url');
$this->load->library('session');
$this->config->item('base_url');
etc.
```

\$this, however, only works directly within your controllers, your models, or your views. If you would like to use CodeIgniter's classes from within your own custom classes you can do so as follows:

First, assign the CodeIgniter object to a variable:

```
$CI =& get_instance();
```

Once you've assigned the object to a variable, you'll use that variable *instead* of **\$this**:

```
$CI =& get_instance();

$CI->load->helper('url');
$CI->load->library('session');
$CI->config->item('base_url');
etc.
```

Note: You'll notice that the above `get_instance()` function is being passed by reference:

```
$CI =& get_instance();
```

This is very important. Assigning by reference allows you to use the original CodeIgniter object rather than creating a copy of it.

Also, please note: If you are running PHP 4 it's usually best to avoid calling **get_instance()** from within your class constructors. PHP 4 has trouble referencing the CI super object within application constructors since objects do not exist until the class is fully instantiated.

Replacing Native Libraries with Your Versions

Simply by naming your class files identically to a native library will cause CodeIgniter to use it instead of the native one. To use this feature you must name the file and the class declaration exactly the same as the native library. For example, to replace the native **Email** library you'll create a file named **application/libraries/Email.php**, and declare your class with:

```
class CI_Email {  
  
}
```

Note that most native classes are prefixed with **CI_**.

To load your library you'll see the standard loading function:

```
$this->load->library('email');
```

Note: At this time the Database classes can not be replaced with your own versions.

Extending Native Libraries

If all you need to do is add some functionality to an existing library - perhaps add a function or two - then it's overkill to replace the entire library with your version. In this case it's better to simply extend the class. Extending a class is nearly identical to replacing a class with a couple exceptions:

- The class declaration must extend the parent class.
- Your new class name and filename must be prefixed with **MY_** (this item is configurable. See below.).

For example, to extend the native **Email** class you'll create a file named **application/libraries/MY_Email.php**, and declare your class with:

```
class MY_Email extends CI_Email {  
  
}
```

Note: If you need to use a constructor in your class make sure you extend the parent constructor:

```
class MY_Email extends CI_Email {  
  
    function My_Email()  
  
}
```

```
{
    parent::CI_Email();
}
```

Loading Your Sub-class

To load your sub-class you'll use the standard syntax normally used. DO NOT include your prefix. For example, to load the example above, which extends the Email class, you will use:

```
$this->load->library('email');
```

Once loaded you will use the class variable as you normally would for the class you are extending. In the case of the email class all calls will use:

```
$this->email->some_function();
```

Setting Your Own Prefix

To set your own sub-class prefix, open your **application/config/config.php** file and look for this item:

```
$config['subclass_prefix'] = 'MY_';
```

Please note that all native CodeIgniter libraries are prefixed with **CI_** so DO NOT use that as your prefix.

Previous Topic: [Using CodeIgniter Libraries](#) · [Top of Page](#) · [User Guide Home](#) · Next Topic: [Creating Core System Classes](#)

[CodeIgniter](#) · Copyright © 2007 · [Ellislab, Inc.](#)

HTML Helper

The HTML Helper file contains functions that assist in working with HTML.

Loading this Helper

This helper is loaded using the following code:

```
$this->load->helper('html');
```

The following functions are available:

heading()

Lets you create HTML `<h1>` tags. The first parameter will contain the data, the second the size of the heading. Example:

```
echo heading('Welcome!', 3);
```

The above would produce: `<h3>Welcome!</h3>`

ol() and ul()

Permits you to generate ordered or unordered HTML lists from simple or multi-dimensional arrays. Example:

```
$this->load->helper('html');

$list = array(
    'red',
    'blue',
    'green',
    'yellow'
```

```

    );

    $attributes = array(
        'class' => 'boldlist',
        'id'    => 'mylist'
    );

    echo ul($list, $attributes);

```

The above code will produce this:

```

<ul class="boldlist" id="mylist">
  <li>red</li>
  <li>blue</li>
  <li>green</li>
  <li>yellow</li>
</ul>

```

Here is a more complex example, using a multi-dimensional array:

```

$this->load->helper('html');

$list = array(
    'colors' => array(
        'red',
        'blue',
        'green'
    ),
    'shapes' => array(
        'round',
        'square',
        'circles' => array(
            'ellipse',
            'oval',
            'sphere'
        )
    ),
    'moods' => array(
        'happy',
        'upset' => array(
            'defeated' => array(
                'dejected',
                'disheartened',
                'depressed'
            ),
            'annoyed',
            'cross',

```

```

        )
    );

    'angry'

echo ul($list);

```

The above code will produce this:

```

<ul class="boldlist" id="mylist">
  <li>colors
    <ul>
      <li>red</li>
      <li>blue</li>
      <li>green</li>
    </ul>
  </li>
  <li>shapes
    <ul>
      <li>round</li>
      <li>suare</li>
      <li>circles
        <ul>
          <li>ellipse</li>
          <li>oval</li>
          <li>sphere</li>
        </ul>
      </li>
    </ul>
  </li>
  <li>moods
    <ul>
      <li>happy</li>
      <li>upset
        <ul>
          <li>defeated
            <ul>
              <li>dejected</li>
              <li>disheartened</li>
              <li>depressed</li>
            </ul>
          </li>
          <li>annoyed</li>
          <li>cross</li>
          <li>angry</li>
        </ul>
      </li>
    </ul>
  </li>
</ul>

```

```
</li>  
</ul>
```

nbs()

Generates non-breaking spaces () based on the number you submit. Example:

```
echo nbs(3);
```

The above would produce:

br()

Generates line break tags (
) based on the number you submit. Example:

```
echo br(3);
```

The above would produce:

Previous Topic: [Form Helper](#) · [Top of Page](#) · [User Guide Home](#) · Next Topic: [Inflector Helper](#)

[CodeIgniter](#) · Copyright © 2007 · [Ellislab, Inc.](#)

Array Helper

The Array Helper file contains functions that assist in working with arrays.

Loading this Helper

This helper is loaded using the following code:

```
$this->load->helper('array');
```

The following functions are available:

element()

Lets you fetch an item from an array. The function tests whether the array index is set and whether it has a value. If a value exists it is returned. If a value does not exist it returns FALSE, or whatever you've specified as the default value via the third parameter.
Example:

```
$array = array('color' => 'red', 'shape' => 'round', 'size' => '');  
  
// returns "red"  
echo element('color', $array);  
  
// returns NULL  
echo element('size', $array, NULL);
```

random_element()

Takes an array as input and returns a random element from it.
Usage example:

```
$quotes = array(
    "I find that the harder I work, the more luck I seem to have. - Thomas
Jefferson",
    "Don't stay in bed, unless you can make money in bed. - George
Burns",
    "We didn't lose the game; we just ran out of time. - Vince Lombardi",
    "If everything seems under control, you're not going fast enough. -
Mario Andretti",
    "Reality is merely an illusion, albeit a very persistent one. - Albert
Einstein",
    "Chance favors the prepared mind - Louis Pasteur"
);

echo random_element($quotes);
```

Previous Topic: [Zip Encoding Class](#) · [Top of Page](#) · [User Guide Home](#) · Next Topic: [Cookie Helper](#)

[CodeIgniter](#) · Copyright © 2007 · [Ellislab, Inc.](#)

Cookie Helper

The Cookie Helper file contains functions that assist in working with cookies.

Loading this Helper

This helper is loaded using the following code:

```
$this->load->helper('cookie');
```

The following functions are available:

set_cookie()

Sets a cookie containing the values you specify. There are two ways to pass information this function so that a cookie can be set: Array Method, and Discreet Parameters:

Array Method

Using this method, an associative array is passed to the first parameter:

```
$cookie = array(
    'name'   => 'The Cookie Name',
    'value'  => 'The Value',
    'expire' => '86500',
    'domain' => '.some-domain.com',
    'path'   => '/',
    'prefix' => 'myprefix_',
);

set_cookie($cookie);
```

Notes:

Only the name and value are required.

The expiration is set in **seconds**, which will be added to the current time. Do not include the time, but rather only the number of seconds from *now* that you wish the cookie to be valid. If the expiration is set to zero the cookie will only last as long as the browser is open.

To delete a cookie set it with the expiration blank.

For site-wide cookies regardless of how your site is requested, add your URL to the **domain** starting with a period, like this: `.your-domain.com`

The path is usually not needed since the function sets a root path.

The prefix is only needed if you need to avoid name collisions with other identically named cookies for your server.

Discreet Parameters

If you prefer, you can set the cookie by passing data using individual parameters:

```
set_cookie($name, $value, $expire, $domain, $path, $prefix);
```

get_cookie()

Lets you fetch a cookie. The first parameter will contain the name of the cookie you are looking for:

```
get_cookie('some_cookie');
```

The function returns FALSE (boolean) if the item you are attempting to retrieve does not exist.

The second optional parameter lets you run the data through the XSS filter. It's enabled by setting the second parameter to boolean TRUE;

```
get_cookie('some_cookie', TRUE);
```

delete_cookie()

Lets you delete a cookie. Unless you've set a custom path or other values, only the name of the cookie is needed:

```
delete_cookie("name");
```

This function is otherwise identical to **set_cookie()**, except that it does not have the value and expiration parameters. You can submit an array of values in the first parameter or you can set discreet parameters.

```
delete_cookie($name, $domain, $path, $prefix)
```

Previous Topic: [Array Helper](#) · [Top of Page](#) · [User Guide Home](#) · Next Topic: [Date Helper](#)

[CodeIgniter](#) · Copyright © 2007 · [Ellislab, Inc.](#)

File Uploading Class

CodeIgniter's File Uploading Class permits files to be uploaded. You can set various preferences, restricting the type and size of the files.

The Process

Uploading a file involves the following general process:

- An upload form is displayed, allowing a user to select a file and upload it.
- When the form is submitted, the file is uploaded to the destination you specify.
- Along the way, the file is validated to make sure it is allowed to be uploaded based on the preferences you set.
- Once uploaded, the user will be shown a success message.

To demonstrate this process here is brief tutorial. Afterward you'll find reference information.

Creating the Upload Form

Using a text editor, create a form called **upload_form.php**. In it, place this code and save it to your **applications/views/** folder:

You'll notice we are using a form helper to create the opening form tag. File uploads require a multipart form, so the helper creates the proper syntax for you. You'll also notice we have an `$error` variable. This is so we can show error messages in the event the user does something wrong.

The Success Page

Using a text editor, create a form called **upload_success.php**. In it, place this code and save it to your **applications/views/** folder:

The Controller

Using a text editor, create a controller called **upload.php**. In it, place this code and save it to your **applications/controllers/** folder:

The Upload Folder

You'll need a destination folder for your uploaded images. Create a folder at the root of your CodeIgniter installation called **uploads** and set its file permissions to 777.

Try it!

To try your form, visit your site using a URL similar to this one:

```
www.your-site.com/index.php/upload/
```

You should see an upload form. Try uploading an image file (either a jpg, gif, or png). If the path in your controller is correct it should work.

Reference Guide

Initializing the Upload Class

Like most other classes in CodeIgniter, the Upload class is initialized in your controller using the **`$this->load->library`** function:

```
$this->load->library('upload');
```

Once the Upload class is loaded, the object will be available using: **`$this->upload`**

Setting Preferences

Similar to other libraries, you'll control what is allowed to be upload based on your preferences. In the controller you built above you set the following preferences:

```
$config['upload_path'] = './uploads/';  
$config['allowed_types'] = 'gif|jpg|png';  
$config['max_size'] = '100';  
$config['max_width'] = '1024';  
$config['max_height'] = '768';  
  
$this->load->library('upload', $config);  
  
// Alternately you can set preferences by calling the initialize function. Useful if  
// you auto-load the class:  
$this->upload->initialize($config);
```

The above preferences should be fairly self-explanatory. Below is a

table describing all available preferences.

Preferences

The following preferences are available. The default value indicates what will be used if you do not specify that preference.

Preference	Default Value	Options	Description
upload_path	None	None	The path to the folder where the upload should be placed. The folder must be writable and the path can be absolute or relative.
allowed_types	None	None	The mime types corresponding to the types of files you allow to be uploaded. Usually the file extension can be used as the mime type. Separate multiple types with a pipe.
overwrite	FALSE	TRUE/FALSE (boolean)	If set to true, if a file with the same name as the one you are uploading exists, it will be overwritten. If set to false, a number will be appended to the filename if another with the same name exists.
max_size	0	None	The maximum size (in kilobytes) that the file can be. Set to zero for no limit. Note: Most PHP installations have their own limit, as specified in the php.ini file. Usually 2 MB (or 2048 KB) by default.
max_width	0	None	The maximum width (in pixels) that the file can be. Set to zero for no limit.
max_height	0	None	The maximum height (in pixels) that the file can be. Set to zero for no limit.

encrypt_name	FALSE	TRUE/FALSE (boolean)	If set to TRUE the file name will be converted to a random encrypted string. This can be useful if you would like the file saved with a name that can not be discerned by the person uploading it.
remove_spaces	TRUE	TRUE/FALSE (boolean)	If set to TRUE, any spaces in the file name will be converted to underscores. This is recommended.

Setting preferences in a config file

If you prefer not to set preferences using the above method, you can instead put them into a config file. Simply create a new file called the **upload.php**, add the **\$config** array in that file. Then save the file in: **config/upload.php** and it will be used automatically. You will NOT need to use the **\$this->upload->initialize** function if you save your preferences in a config file.

Function Reference

The following functions are available

\$this->upload->do_upload()

Performs the upload based on the preferences you've set. Note: By default the upload routine expects the file to come from a form field called **userfile**, and the form must be a "multipart type:

```
<form method="post" action="some_action" enctype="multipart/form-data" />
```

If you would like to set your own field name simply pass its value to the **do_upload** function:

```
$field_name = "some_field_name";
$this->upload->do_upload($field_name)
```

`$this->upload->display_errors()`

Retrieves any error messages if the **`do_upload()`** function returned false. The function does not echo automatically, it returns the data so you can assign it however you need.

Formatting Errors

By default the above function wraps any errors within `<p>` tags. You can set your own delimiters like this:

```
$this->upload->display_errors('<p>', '</p>');
```

`$this->upload->data()`

This is a helper function that returns an array containing all of the data related to the file you uploaded. Here is the array prototype:

```
Array
(
    [file_name]    => mypic.jpg
    [file_type]    => image/jpeg
    [file_path]    => /path/to/your/upload/
    [full_path]    => /path/to/your/upload/jpg.jpg
    [raw_name]     => mypic
    [orig_name]    => mypic.jpg
    [file_ext]     => .jpg
    [file_size]    => 22.2
    [is_image]     => 1
    [image_width]  => 800
    [image_height] => 600
    [image_type]   => jpeg
    [image_size_str] => width="800" height="200"
)
```

Explanation

Here is an explanation of the above array items.

Item	Description
file_name	The name of the file that was uploaded including the file extension.
file_type	The file's Mime type

file_path	The absolute server path to the file
full_path	The absolute server path including the file name
raw_name	The file name without the extension
orig_name	The original file name. This is only useful if you use the encrypted name option.
file_ext	The file extension with period
file_size	The file size in kilobytes
is_image	Whether the file is an image or not. 1 = image. 0 = not.
image_width	Image width.
image_height	Image height
image_type	Image type. Typically the file extension without the period.
image_size_str	A string containing the width and height. Useful to put into an image tag.

Previous Topic: [Download Helper](#) · [Top of Page](#) · [User Guide Home](#) · Next Topic: [FTP Class](#)

[CodeIgniter](#) · Copyright © 2007 · [Ellislab, Inc.](#)

Security Helper

The Security Helper file contains security related functions.

Loading this Helper

This helper is loaded using the following code:

```
$this->load->helper('security');
```

The following functions are available:

xss_clean()

Provides Cross Site Script Hack filtering. This function is an alias to the one in the [Input class](#). More info can be found there.

dohash()

Permits you to create SHA1 or MD5 one way hashes suitable for encrypting passwords. Will create SHA1 by default. Examples:

```
$str = dohash($str); // SHA1  
$str = dohash($str, 'md5'); // MD5
```

strip_image_tags()

This is a security function that will strip image tags from a string. It leaves the image URL as plain text.

```
$string = strip_image_tags($string);
```

encode_php_tags()

This is a security function that converts PHP tags to entities. Note: If you use the XSS filtering function it does this automatically.

```
$string = encode_php_tags($string);
```

Previous Topic: [Inflector Helper](#) · [Top of Page](#) · [User Guide Home](#) · Next Topic: [Smiley Helper](#)

[CodeIgniter](#) · Copyright © 2007 · [Ellislab, Inc.](#)

Directory Helper

The Directory Helper file contains functions that assist in working with directories.

Loading this Helper

This helper is loaded using the following code:

```
$this->load->helper('directory');
```

The following functions are available:

directory_map('source directory')

This function reads the directory path specified in the first parameter and builds an array representation of it and all its contained files. Example:

```
$map = directory_map('./mydirectory/');
```

Note: Paths are almost always relative to your main index.php file.

Sub-folders contained within the directory will be mapped as well. If you wish to map only the top level directory set the second parameter to **true** (boolean):

```
$map = directory_map('./mydirectory/', TRUE);
```

Each folder name will be an array index, while its contained files will be numerically indexed. Here is an example of a typical array:

```
Array
(
    [libraries] => Array
        (
            [0] => benchmark.html
            [1] => config.html
            [database] => Array
                (
                    [0] => active_record.html
                    [1] => binds.html
                    [2] => configuration.html
                    [3] => connecting.html
                    [4] => examples.html
                    [5] => fields.html
                    [6] => index.html
                    [7] => queries.html
                )
            [2] => email.html
            [3] => file_uploading.html
            [4] => image_lib.html
            [5] => input.html
            [6] => language.html
            [7] => loader.html
            [8] => pagination.html
            [9] => uri.html
        )
)
```

[Previous Topic: Date Helper](#) · [Top of Page](#) · [User Guide Home](#) · [Next Topic: Download Helper](#)

[CodeIgniter](#) · Copyright © 2007 · [Ellislab, Inc.](#)